

# Relational Database Management System

Dr. Babasaheb Ambedkar Open University



# **Relational Database Management System**

#### **Course Writer**

Dr. Amit Bardhan	Assistant Professor, Computer Science Department, Som Lalit Education and Research Foundation, Ahmedabad
Dr. Badal Kothari	Assistant Professor, Department of Computer Science, Hemchandracharya North Gujarat University, Patan
Dr. Vinod Desai	Assistant Professor, Gujarat Vidhyapith, Ahmedabad
Content Reviewer	
Prof. (Dr.) Amit Ganatra	Dean, Faculty of Technology and Engineering School of Computer Science, Charotar University of Science and Technology, Changa
Content Editor	

# Prof. (Dr.) Nilesh K. Modi Professor & Director, School of Computer Science, Dr. Babasaheb Ambedkar Open University

Copyright © Dr. Babasaheb Ambedkar Open University – Ahmedabad.

#### ISBN-

Printed and published by: Dr. B abasaheb A mbedkar Open University, A hmedabad While all efforts have been made by editors to check accuracy of the content, the representation of facts, principles, descriptions and methods are that of the respective module writers. Views expressed in the publication are that of the authors, and do not necessarily reflect the views of Dr. Babasaheb Ambedkar Open University. A II products and se rvices mentioned ar e ow ned by t heir r espective copyrights holders, and mere pr esentation i n t he publication does n ot m ean endorsement by Dr. Babasaheb Ambedkar Open University. Every effort has been made to acknowledge and attribute all sources of information used in preparation of this learning material. Readers are requested to kindly notify missing attribution, if any.



Relational Database Management System

Block-1: Fundamental of Database Management System

UNIT-1 Basic Concepts of DBMS	07
UNIT-2 Architecture of DBMS	17
<b>UNIT-3</b> Data Models	26
<b>UNIT-4</b> Database Design	40

# Block-2: Relational Data Model and Introduction to Oracle Server

<b>UNIT-1</b> Functional Dependency and Normalization	64
UNIT-2 Oracle Database Architecture	90
UNIT-3 Distributed Database Architecture	116
UNIT-4 Database Backup	139

# Block-3: Oracle Server and SQL

UNIT-1 Structured Query Language	160
UNIT-2 Stored Procedures and Functions	193
<b>UNIT-3</b> Package and Trigger	212
<b>UNIT-4</b> Managing User Privileges & Roles and User Profile	239

# Block-4: Introduction to PL/SQL

UNIT-1 Introduction to PL/SQL	260
<b>UNIT-2</b> Cursor	276
UNIT-3 Locking	293
<b>UNIT-4</b> Exception Handling	301

# Block-1

# **Fundamental of Database**

# **Management System**

# Unit 1: Basic Concepts of DBMS

## **Unit Structure**

- Learning Objectives 1.1.
- 1.2. Introduction
- 1.3. **Basic Concepts**
- 1.4. Data
- 1.5. Database
- Database systems 1.6.
- 1.7. Database management system
- Purpose and advantages of database management system 1.8.
- 1.9. **DBMS** Functions
- 1.10. Disadvantages of database systems
- 1.11. Check Your Progress

# **1.1 LEARNING OBJECTIVE**

By the end of this unit you should be able to:

- Differentiate between data and information.
- Understand the importance of database and DBMS.

# **1.2 INTRODUCTION**

In today's competitive environment d ata and its proficient administration is the most significant business objective of any firm. The fact is we are in an erawhere people ar e bom barded w ith h uge amount of information explosion. D us to this it becomes difficult to f etch correct information at r ight time to make d ecisions properly. Therefore success of every business is highly dependent on how the data is collected, stored and processed for timely decision making.

Any information system like online shopping websites, inventory management systems, clinic m anagement s oftware, onl ine t rading app lications et c. needs database t o s tore and r etrieve the d ata at regular intervals. D BMS acts as b ackend f or a ll the different web bas ed an d d esktop bas ed ap plications. W e c annot imagine a s ingle s ector w ere DBMS is no t being us ed. F or e xample banking, e -governance, l ogistics, universities, airlines ag encies, t icket booking, accounting & f iling and every other k ind of h uman endeavor. T he m anagement of da ta i n al I t hese s ystems i s done by t he m eans of a general purpose software package called a database management system.

A dat abase m anagement s ystem is a t ool t o m anage t he data and per form v arious activities that include:

- ✓ Creating different databases.
- ✓ Craft required table structures.
- ✓ Inserting records in the tables.
- ✓ Retrieving information from the different tables based on criteria.
- ✓ Deleting the records based on various conditions.
- ✓ Updating the records wherever and whenever necessary.
- ✓ Changing the table structure if required. Etc.

Apart f rom t he above m entioned b asic f unctionalities of t he d atabase m anagement system, there are plenty of other functionality like creating users and assigning roles to them, security management, transaction management, managing system catalog, data dictionary m anagement, dat a bac kup and r ecovery et c w hich are being m anaged by DBMS.

The role of the DBMS is to act as an intermediary between the users and the database. The DBMS interprets and pr ocesses client's requests to fetch the required information from a dat abase. It s erves as an interface in s everal forms like it c an be directly accessed from a terminal or using some high level language programs for individual or batch dat a processing. The request from DBMS to perform various actions is given in terms of SQL (Structure Query Language), which you will be learning in the upcoming units. DBMS s hields the da tabase us ers from the complexity of t edious programming they would have to do to organize data for storage, or to gain access to it once it was stored. H ere ar e g oing t o I earn abo ut R elational D atabase Management S ystem (RDBMS) that stores data in the form of associated tables. Most common examples of RDMS include MySQL, Oracle, PostgreSQL, Microsoft SQL Server etc.

# **1.3 BASIC CONCEPTS**

Storing d ata, processing it as per r equirement a nd r etrieving t he r equired information has be en a nec essity in each and e very or ganization t oday. The t erm dat a c an be explained in terms of "A set of isolated an unrelated raw fact with an implicit meaning". In simpler terms dat a is a r aw fact. It c an b e a nything such as a name of a p erson, designation o f a n employee, an a udio, video, des ignation of a person et c. After performing a s eries of ac tion on t he dat a w hat w e g et i s an m eaningful i nformation. Thus i nformation c an defined as dat a w ith s ome f ixed an d de finite m eaning. F or example, "The cost of the book for programming in python is 750 Rs" is an example of information.

Generally data is what goes into a data processing system and information is the processed data that comes out of the data processing unit.

Limitations of the File based Systems:

- Separation and isolation of data
- Duplication of data
- Structural and data dependence
- Extreme programming effort
- Cannot execute ad hoc queries
- Security features are likely to be insufficient
- System management is complex and complicated

# **1.4 DATA**

Data is not hing but a raw fact from which information is generated. Data alone does not have any meaning unless it is organized or arranged in some logical manner. A user must ensure that only valid and significant data must go into the system else the information obtained may not be that trustworthy for the purpose of decision making.

The smallest piece of dat at hat a computer understands is a single character, for an example letter 'S', or a number '6' or a special character '\$'. A single character requires one byte of storage.

A character or a group of character that has some specific meaning is called a *field*. A field name uniquely identifies each field.

A logically related set of one or more fields that describe an entity or real world object is called a *record*. For example the fields that constitute bank account record are account number, name, address, pincode, account type, opening date, mode of operation etc. A collection of related records is called a *table*. An example of department table is given below:

Dept_no	Dept_name	Location	]	
10	Finance	Ahmedabad		I
20	Purchase	Rajkot		Records
30	Marketing	Bhavnagar		
40	EDP	Baroda	◀────	
1	1	Î	-	

Fields

Figure 1: Department Table

# 1.5 DATABASE

A database is a collection of well organized data in the computer's storage systems that can be used by the application software for some given enterprise. The stored data can be accessed, processed and presented by DBMS to serve a specific purpose. The term enterprise c an thought in terms of an y individual or large body like a u niversity, bank, logistics company, warehouse etc.

In general database is a shared, collective system construction that stores a collection of:

- End user data. i.e. the raw facts
- Metadata or data about the data.

Here the metadata provides a detailed explanation of the data, its distinctiveness and set of associations or relationships that links the data. Given the uniqueness of metadata, database can be described as a "collection of self-describing data."

# **1.6 DATABASE SYSTEMS**

A d atabase s ystem is principally an automated r ecord m aintenance s ystem w hose overall r eason is to s tore i nformation an d to per mit the us ers to m anipulate the information as per requirement. Here we are using the term *data* to refer to what is in point of fact s tored in the da tabase and *information* to refer to the meaning of dat a as understood by the client.

Database s ystem i s obt ainable on a II t he m achines t hat r ange f rom t he s mallest handheld devices to PC's to large main frame computers.

# 1.7 DATABASE MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

A d atabase m anagement s ystem (DBMS) is a c ompilation of programs that m anages the dat abase s tructure a nd c ontrols access to the data s tored in the d atabase. D BMS serves as a mediator be tween the c lient a nd dat abase b y hi ding all the c omplexities from the end user.

# 1.8PURPOSE AND ADVANTAGES OF DATABASE MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

The D BMS r eceives the en tire ap plications r equest an d t ranslates t hem i nto t he complex op erations that are r equired to fulfill those r equests. It also hides the internal complexity from the application programs and users. The applications programs can be written in any language like Python, Java, C++ etc.



#### Figure-2 DBMS managing the functions between the client and the database

DBMS also allows the data to be shared among the multiple applications or clients and helps in merging many different views of data into single data repository. In particular DBMS provides the following advantages over the files system:

- *Better data sharing capabilities:* The D BMS he lps t o gen erate an environment in which the end users locally or globally can have access to the data for quick decision making.
- *Enhanced data security:* DBMS provides a s tructure to implement da ta privacy and security policies. Different categories of roles can be created for special users and rights can be given accordingly.

- Superior data integration facilities: Wider admittance to well managed data promotes a n incorporated view of the or ganizations op erations a nd a apparent view of the complex picture.
- Reduced data inconsistency: It e xists when different v ersions of s ame data ap pear in diverse locations. F or e xample data inconsistency exits when the name in your bank account and the name on your cheque book differ. This possibility can be reduced by properly designing the database.
- Faster data access: When deal ing w ith hu ge am ount o f dat a D BMS makes it possible to produce quick answers to any queries by using SQL. Example qu eries c an be how p eople have d eposited notes of 5 00 denominations at the time demonetization in ABC branch.
- *Improved decision making:* If the data is managed properly and faster data access i s done i t m akes pr obable to produce en hanced s uperiority information, based on which better decisions can be taken.
- *Improved end user productivity:* The ease of use of data, shared with the tools that alter data into usable information, allow end users to make rapid, knowledgeable decisions.

# **1.9 DBMS FUNCTIONS**

A D BMS performs quite a l ot of significant functions that promises the reliability and u niformity of t he da ta i n t he d atabase. F ew o f t he i mportant f unctions ar e mentioned below:

✓ Data transformation and presentation: The DBMS converts the entered data to confirm with the required data structures; therefore it relieves you from the task of making distinction between logical and the physical format. For example the

date the format in INDIA is DD/MM/YYYY, but in MySQL is YYYY-MM-DD, so transformation in to the required format can be easily made.

- ✓ Multiuser access control: To provide data steadiness DBMS uses classy algorithms to make sure that multiple users can access the database in parallel without compromising the integrity of the database.
- ✓ Security Management: DBMS enforces us er s ecurity at d ifferent levels in or der to pr ovide w hich d ata operations a gr oup o f us ers or a p articular us er c an perform. DBMS assigns access privileges for various database components.
- ✓ Data dictionary management: DBMS s tores definitions of da ta el ements and their m etadata. It us es dat a di ctionary t o c ome ac ross up t he nec essary dat a constituent structures and its associations.
- ✓ Data storage management: A modern D BMS provides storage not only for the facts but also for associated data entry forms, report definitions, data validation regulations, formations to handle audio and video formats and so on. It actually stores the database in multiple physical data files.
- ✓ Backup and recovery management: To provide data safety and integrity DBMS provides backup and recovery control. It basically deals with the recovery of bad sector in the disk and also data recovery at the time power failures.
- ✓ Data integrity management: DBMS supports and implement integrity regulations, thus minimizing data repetition and increasing consistency.
- ✓ Database access languages and API: DBMS m ake av ailable dat a ac cess through a query language called SQL. Structured Query Language (SQL) is a de facto query language s upported b y m ajority of the DBMS vendors. Apart from

that DBMS also provides application programming interfaces to main programming languages like Python, C#, Java, Magento, PHP etc.

 ✓ Database communication interface: DBMS provides admittance to the database via command line terminals, via web browsers (GUI) etc.

## **1.10 Disadvantages of Database System**

DBMS do carry significant disadvantages as mentioned below:

- Increased cost: Database s ystem nee ds s ophisticated hardware a nd s oftware and e xtremely c apable e xpert to m anage it. T hus t he c ost of m anaging t he people, s oftware and h ardware a nd providing training, licensing add an ex tra overhead to cost.
- *Management Complexity:* Database s ystem boun dary w ith m any di verse technologies and ar e c an bec ome m ore and m ore c omplex i n or der t o h andle day to day transactions.
- *Maintaining currency:* To make the most of the database it is required to keep your systems current. That leads to frequent upgrades and increased in training cost.
- Vendor Dependence: The end us ers are he avily v endor dep endent s ince t hey are s toring eac h and every i nformation i nto t he dat abase. On t he c ontrary t he vendors are less likely to offer pricing point reward to the existing clients.

*Frequent Upgrade cycle:* DBMS vendor repeatedly advance their products by incrementing new functionalities. And many a times those software upgrades requires new hardware resources.

## 1.11 Check your progress

- 1. Define the following terms:
  - a. Data

- b. Information
- c. Field
- d. Record
- 2. List and explain the limitations of file based systems.
- 3. Discuss the purpose and advantages if DBMS.
- 4. List and explain DBMS functions in detail.
- 5. Explain the potential cost of implementing a database system.

2

# **Unit 2: Architecture Of DBMS**

## **Unit Structure**

- 2.1. Learning Objectives
- 2.2. Architecture of DBMS
- 2.3. Various components of DBMS
- 2.4. Check your Progress

# 2.1 LEARNING OBJECTIVE

By the end of this unit you should be able to:

- Understand the basic architecture
- Understand basics components of DBMS

# **2.2 INTRODUCTION**

DBMS is very sophisticated software a pplication that provides reliable management of large amounts of data. To understand all-purpose database concepts and the structure and c apabilities of a D BMS b etter, the s tructural design of a t ypical D BMS must be known.

# 2.3 ARCHITECTURE OF DBMS

The DBMS architecture describes how the data in the database is viewed by the different users. This architecture provides the data at different levels of the abstraction to the users by hiding the complexities of its internal management activities. In this architecture the overall database description can be defined at three levels:

- Internal
- Conceptual
- External levels

For this reason many a times it's known as three-level DBMS architecture. The architecture is proposed by ANSI/SPARC (American National Standard Institute/ Standards Planning and Requirement committee).



A-External / Conceptual Mapping (Logical Data Independence) B-Conceptual / Internal Mapping (Physical Data Independence)

Figure-3 Three Level DBMS Architecture

#### External Level:

It is the highest level of abs traction that de als with the us er's view of dat abase and therefore it's also k nown as view level. The external level describes the part of the database to a specific group of users or to an individual user.

Each view available to the user is customized to their requirements. It may be possible that same data may be visible to different users through different interfaces. In this way it also provides a powerful and flexible security mechanism by hiding certain data from certain users. The dat a des cribed at this I evel is independent of both har dware and software. Generally entity relationship diagram is used to represent the external view as the data is modeled.

#### **Conceptual Level:**

This level of a bstraction d eals with l ogical s tructure of the entire dat abase and i s also known as logical view. The view describes the structure and the type of the data that is stored in the database along with the relationships among the data.

It des cribes a II the r equirements of t he users w ithout t he description o f ph ysical implementation. It is the overall view of the dat abase k eeping in the consideration t he

DBMS software that is going to be us ed. This view is thus dependent on the software but independent of the hardware.

#### Internal Level:

This level des cribes dat a at the lowest level of abs traction that dea ls with phy sical representation of the database on the computer and is also known as physical level. It describes how the data is stored and is organized on the physical storage medium.

At this I evel v arious as pects are c onsidered to achieve o ptimal r untime per formance and s torage s pace utilization. This I evel is dependent on the software (mostly the OS) as well as hardware.

To understand the three-level database architecture consider the example of Employee database as shown in the figure 1.4. In this figure two views (View 1 and View 2) of the Employee d atabase are defined at an external level. Hence different us ers c an s ee different external views that they queried. The details about the data type and the size of the fields are hidden from the users at the external level.

At the conceptual level the employee records are described along with their data types. The application programmers and the DBA generally work at this level of abstraction. At the i nternal level t he em ployee r ecords ar e d escribed as a b lock o f c onsecutive locations s uch as w ords or b ytes. T he database users and t he ap plications programmers are not aware of these details; however the DBA may be aware of certain details of the physical organization of the data.

When a us er s pecifies a r equest t o g enerate a new external v iew, t he D BMS m ust transform the r equest s pecified at the external l evel into a r equest at c onceptual l evel followed into a request at physical level. If the user requests for data retrieval, the data extracted from the database must be presented according to the need of the user. This process of t ransforming t he r equests and r esults b etween v arious I evels o f D BMS architecture is known as mapping.



Figure-4 Three levels of Employee Database

The main merit of three-level DBMS architecture is that it provides data independence. Data independence is the ability to change the schema at one level of the database system without changing the schema at the other levels. Data independence is of two types:

#### Logical Data Independence:

The ability to adapt the conceptual level without altering the external level or application program is k nown as I ogical dat a independence. The conceptual s chema c an be changed due to the change in constraints or addition of new features. This change will have no effect on the external levels chemathat is already there. Logical data independence is difficult to achieve as the application programs are always dependent on the logical structure of the database. Therefore changes in the logical structure of the database.

#### Physical Data Independence:

The ability to change the internal level without changing the conceptual level is known as physical dat a independence. The transform in the datas torages tructure or access strategy or indexing technique will have no effect on the conceptual schema. This is because the mapping between the conceptual schema and the internal level is provided mostly by DBMS and changes are taken care of by mapping. Hence the physical data independence is easy to achieve.

# 2.4 VARIOUS COMPONENTS OF DBMS

The database system is composed of five major components, that is:

- Hardware
- Software
- People
- Procedures and
- Data

Let's take an individual look at the five components:



Figure-5 Database system environment

• *Hardware*: It r efers t o all t he s ystem's phy sical de vices t hat c an be s torage devices, net work d evices, pr inters, s ervers, w orkstations, c omputer et c. T he computer m ay r ange from per sonal c omputers t o a m ain f rame and it m ay include one powerful server depending upon the organizations requirements and the size of the database.

A g ood database s ystem requires a d atabase s erver with a f ast processor and significantly I arge amount of m ain m emory. It also i ncludes different k ind of peripheral devices to handle various kinds of data. The advancement in computer har dware t echnology and de velopment of pow erful c omputers has resulted into increased database technology development and its application.

- **Software:** There are basically three types of software needed:
  - Operating System: It m anages all the hardware c omponents and m akes it possible f or t he s oftware t o r un on t he c omputer. Most c ommonly us ed operating systems are LINUX, WINDOWS, MAC etc.
  - DBMS: DBMS s oftware m anages the data in the d atabase. S ome examples of commonly used DBMS software include- MySQL, Oracle, DB2, MSAccess etc.
  - Application programs and utility software: It is used to access and manipulate data in the DBMS. Applications programs are used to provide an interface to accept dat a f rom t he us er. T hey ar e also us ed t o access dat a f rom t he database in order to provide reports, tabulations and other logical information to the user. Utility software is used to help manage some DBMS components.
- **People:** It i ncludes all the users who interact with an y component of the database system environment. List of all the users are listed below:
  - Database Administrator: DBA is one of the main user responsible for managing the DBMS and controlling the database of the DBMS. DBA is mainly responsible for setting up procedures and standards and ensuring that they are implemented properly.

- System Administrator: System administrator is the one who takes care of all t he c omputers i n t he n etwork, and t he da tabase s ystems gener al operations.
- Database Designer: They are also called data base architects. They along with the database administrator design the structure of the database. If the database des ign i s poor o ther a I c omponents of t he d atabase s ystem environment become helpless.
- System Analyst and Programmers: They des ign a nd implement t he application pr ograms. T hey are r esponsible f or des igning t he f orms and reports. T hey m ay also s et up pr ocedures t hrough w hich e nd users access and manipulate the data in the database.
- End User: They are t hose us ers w ho us e t he app lication pr ograms t o manage the da y-to-day o perations of the bus iness. End us ers include a ll employees of the organization starting from the data entry operators to the decision makers. Some of them enter raw data and some of them process the raw data and generate information.
- Procedure: Procedures are instructions and rules that govern the design and use of the d atabase s ystem. Procedures h elp t o m aintain c ertain I evel of s tandards and ensure that the data entering the system and information generated from the system are all in well organized manner.
- **Data:**Data is nothing but raw facts from which the information is generated. Data actually includes the entire collection of data that go es into the database. Only valid and s ignificant data must go into the system else the information obtained may not be reliable for the purpose of decision making.

# 2.5 Check your progress

- 1. Explain the 3-level database architecture in detail.
- 2. What is data independence? Explain in brief logical data independence and physical data independence.
- 3. Write a short note on database system environment.

3

# Unit 3: Data Models

### **Unit Structure**

- 3.1. Learning Objectives
- 3.2. Introduction
- 3.3. Data modelling
- 3.4. The hierarchical data model
- 3.5. Network data model
- 3.6. Relational data model
- 3.7. Entity Relationship data model
- 3.8. Object oriented data model
- 3.9. Comparison between data model
- 3.10. Check your Progress

# **3.1 LEARNING OBJECTIVE**

After studying this unit student should be able to:

• Evaluate different data model and its mapping.

# **3.2 INTRODUCTION**

One of the main objectives of the databases ystems is dat a abstraction that is to highlight on ly the essential features and to hide the storage and data organization details from the user. A model is an abstraction process that concentrates on essential and intrinsic features of the application while ignoring the details that are not important. A database model provides the necessary means to achieve data abstraction. A data model allows the conceptualization of the association between entities and its attributes.

A data model is a simple demonstration, generally graphical, of more complex real word data structures. It consists of a set of data structures and conceptual tools that is used to describe the structure (Data types, relationships and constraints) of a database.

A d ata m odel n ot on ly describes the arrangement of the data, it also d efines a s et of operations that can be performed on the data. A data model generally consists of data model theory, which is a f ormal d escription of h ow dat a m ay b e s tructured and us ed, and d ata m odel i nstance, w hich i s pr actical data m odel d esigned f or a particular application. The process of applying data model theory to create a data model instance is known as data modeling.

# 3.3 DATA MODELING

A data m odel c an b e very useful c ommunication t ool t hat pr ovides a m eans of interaction between the databases designer, application programmer and the end user. There are different types of data model that are explained in the next section.

# **3.4 THE HIERARCHICAL DATA MODEL**

The hierarchical model was the first proper model developed. Its basic logical structure is represented by an upside down tree.



Figure-6 Hierarchical Data Model

The hierarchical structure contains levels or segments. A segment is equivalent to a file system record type. With the hierarchy the top most level or segment is known as a root node or the parent node. The root node or the parent node is assigned the level -0 as shown in the F igure-6. Again within the hierarchy each s egment is per ceived as a parent of the segment below it.

In other words, each record is perceived as a parent record of the segment or the child record below it. As shown in the Figure-6 the segment at level-0 i.e. the root node is the parent node for the segments at level-1. Similarly the records at level-1 are also parent records for those records at level-2.

The h ierarchical d ata m odel is best suitable to represent on e-to-many relationship as shown in figure 1.6. In this m odel each parent record c an h ave multiple c hild records related to it. The l imitation of t his m odel is on e c hild record c an h ave only on e parent record. Hence it is difficult to represent many-to-many relationship using this model.



Figure-7 Hierarchical data model relationship

Figure-7 shows a h ierarchical d ata m odel of a university tree type consisting of three levels. A s ingle c ollege r ecord a tt he r oot I evel r epresents one i nstance of t he department record type. Multiple instances of a given record are used at lower level to show that a d epartment m ay consist of m any courses and one course m ay consist of many subjects.

#### Merits of Hierarchical Model:

- ✓ Simplicity: It is simple and easy to understand and implement as the relationship between the various layers is logical and always 1:M
- Data Integrity: The parent/child relationship is always there between the layers.
  The m odel pr omotes dat a i ntegrity as the child s egments are aut omatically referenced to its parent segment.

- Efficiency: It is very efficient when the database contains large amount of data in 1: Mr elationships an d w hen I arge number of transaction are r equired us ing data, having relationship fixed over time.
- Data Sharing: Data s haring bec omes pr actical as all t he dat a ar e he ld i n a common place.

#### Demerits of Hierarchical Model:

- Implementation complexity: It is qui et c omplex t o i mplement as t he D BMS requires t he k nowledge o f phy sical I evel of d atas torage a nd t he dat abase designers s hould ha ve a v ery good k nowledge of t he physical dat a s torage characteristics.
- Implementation limitation: The model do es not allow o ne c hild r ecord t o be related to multiple parent record types. This poses great difficulty in representing many-to-many relationship.
- ✓ Inflexibility: The c hanges in t he new r elation or s egments of ten y ield v ery complex m anagement t ask. T he de letion of one s egment w ill c ause all ot her segments below it to be deleted.
- Database Management problems: If any changes are made to the database structure, it becomes essential to change all the application programs that access the database.
- No standards: There are no laid down set standards on how to implement the model.

# 3.5 NETWORK DATA MODEL

The network model was created to represent complex data relationship more effectively then t he hi erarchical m odel, t o i mprove d atabase p erformance, an d t o i mpose a database standard.

The n etwork m odel is similar to the hierarchical data m odel except that a record c an have m ultiple par ents. T his m odel h as three bas ic c omponents s uch as record type, data items and links.

A relationship is called a set in which each set is composed of at least two record typesowner record (same as parent record) and member record (same as child record). The connection between an owner and a member is identified by a link to which a set name is assigned.

The set name is used to retrieve and manipulate data. The link between the owners and their m embers i ndicate access pat hs in the network m odel and ar etypically implemented with pointers. In network data model, member can appear in more than one s et and thus may have s everal ow ners, and hence it facilitates many-to-many relationship. A set represents a on e-to-many relationship between the owner and the member.



#### Figure-8 Network Data Model

In the above diagram a sample network data model is represented. As shown the member 'B' has only one owner 'A', whereas member 'E' has two owners 'B' and 'C'.

The figure-9 it demonstrates a distinctive network model representation for sales process. The model represents five record types namely- Sales\_person, Customer, Item, Sales\_order, Billing and Order\_detail. Here the entity Sales\_order has two owners Sales\_person and Client. Similarly Order\_detail has two owners Item and Sales\_order. In this model eack link between two record types represents a one-to-many relationship between them.



Figure-9 Network Model for Sales Process

#### Merits of Network Model:

- Simplicity: Same as hierarchical model network model is also simple and easy to understand.
- Facilitating more relationship types: The network m odel is ablet o h andle many-to-many relationship as a member can have multiple owners. This helps in modeling real life situations in a much better way.
- Superior Data Access: An application c an access an ow ner record and all the member record within the set. Hence the data access and flexibility found in this model are much better as compared to the hierarchical model.
- ✓ Database Integrity: It enforces integrity and does not allow a member to exist without an owner.

- ✓ Support for DBMS: It i ncludes D ata D efinition L anguage (DDL) a nd D ata Manipulation Language (DML) in DBMS.
- Database Standards: It is based on universal standards formulated by DBTG (Database task group) / CODASYL (Conference on data system languages) and improved by ANSI/SPARC.

#### Demerits of Network Model:

- System Complexity: Network models are difficult to design and us e properly. The n avigational access mechanism accesses only one record at a time and hence m akes t he s ystem i mplementation v ery c omplex. K nowledge of t he internal data structure is required to take the advantage of this model.
- ✓ Absence of Structural Independence: If c hanges ar e m ade t o database structure, all subschema descriptions have to be updated before any application program can access the data.

## 3.6 RELATIONAL DATABASE MODEL

The r elational da tam odel w as or iginally c ommenced by D r. E .F. C odd. I ti s implemented t hrough a v ery s ophisticated r elational dat abase m anagement s ystem (RDBMS). IT n ot on ly per forms the s ame bas ic functions that are t here in hierarchical and network model but also provides the ability to hide the complexities of the relational model from the end user. Table is a matrix consisting of series row/column intersections related t o e ach ot her t hrough s haring a c ommon ent ity c haracteristic. R elational diagram i s a r epresentation of r elational database's ent ities, at tributes w ithin t hose entities, and r elationship between t hose entities. R elational table s tores a c ollection of related e ntities and r esembles a f ile. R elational table is p urely a logical s tructure a nd how da ta are p hysically s tored in t he database is of n o c oncern to t he user or t he designer.

In relational data model, tables are related to each other through the sharing of common attribute. F or example the S ubject table in the given F igure 1. 10 c ontains F aculty\_id field and the same filed also exists in the Faculty table.

Faculty			
Faculty_id	Faculty_name	Department	
F001	Dr. Nilesh Modi	Computer Science	
F002	Prof. Ramesh Kataria	Mathematics	
F003	Prof. Kamesh Raval	Computer Science	
F004	Dr. Amit Ganatra	Computer Science	

Subject			
Subject_id	Subject_name	Faculty_id	
S001	Computer Network	F001	
S002	Discrete Maths	F002	
S003	Database	F004	
S004	.Net	F003	

#### Figure-10 Relational Data Model

The common field between Faulty and the Subject tables allows a subject to match with the details of the faculty who is teaching it. Here although the tables are independent of each ot her, the data b etween the two tables can be easily as sociated. The relational database provides the least amount of redundancy.

#### Merits of Relational Data Model:

- Conceptual Simplicity: The t abular view of s toring and m anaging the d ata improves c onceptual s implicity, thereby e ncouraging e asier database blueprint, implementation, administration and usage.
- Structural Independence: The r elational dat a m odel do es not dep end o n t he navigational da ta ac cess and henc e t he c hanges i n t he t able s tructure d o not affect the data access.

- Flexible and powerful query capability: It provides very powerful, flexible and easy t o us e q uerying f acilities. IT has S QL t o ex ecute t he r equired da ta operations and manipulations.
- **RDBMS support:** The availability of powerful RDBMS isolates the end user from the physical-level details and improves execution and administration ease.

#### Demerits of Relational Data Model:

- ✓ Hardware Overhead: This model r equires a fast processor along with a large capacity and high s peed s econdary s torage d evices t o per form t he as signed tasks. Now-a-days this is not that big disadvantage as the computing speed is getting doubles e very e ighteen m onths a nd the c ost of s torage devices ar e getting reduced to a great extent.
- Poor Design by untrained professionals: Because of e ase of us e m any a times it is managed by untrained professional to develop the required queries. So queries and r eports w ritten w ithout pr oper logical t hinking r esults i n s lower system and performance degradation.

# 3.7 ENTITY RELATIONSHIP DATA MODEL (ER MODELS)

The E ntity r elationship m odel w as i nitially projected by P eter C hen i n 197 6. It is a graphical r epresentation of d atabase s tructure using entities a nd r elationship am ong entities. The E R Model m atched t he r elational dat a m odel v ery s atisfactorily. T he combination provides a very good database design.

The ER model is has following components mentioned below:

**Entity Set:** It is a real world object for which data are collected and stored. It is just one instance of an entity s et. The term entity and entity s et are different but c an be used interchangeably. An entity s et is represented by a r ectangle in an E R d iagram. The

name of the entity is generally noun and singular. Examples of entity are Department, Course, Student etc.

**Attributes:** The characteristics of an entity is called an attribute. One entity can have multiple a ttributes like a n entity C ourse can have Course\_id, Course\_name, D uration etc are the attributes.

**Relationships:** It describes an connection between two entities. There are three types of possible relationships between the entities, they are one-to-one (1:1), one-to-many (1:M) and many-to-many(M:N).



#### Figure-11 Sample ER Diagram using Crow's Foot Notation

The above figure illustrates 1: M relationship between the entities Country, State, City and Area. The idCountry at tribute from the Country table is referenced in S tate table. Therefore it represents one-to-many (1:M) relationship between the entity Country and S tate, which means one country c an have many states. Similarly there is on e-tomany relationship between State entity and City, and 1:M relationship between City and Area entity.

#### Merits of ER Model:

- ✓ The ER model is a graphical demonstration of entities which results in complete clarity and simplicity in understanding.
- ✓ ER model also goes in combination with the relational model data model and with help of some tools like MySQL Workbench conversion.

#### Demerit of ER Model:

 Depending upon different logical perceptions many a times it's not possible to specify most of the constraints.

# 3.8 OBJECT ORIENTED DATA MODEL (OODM)

The object oriented data model is a logical data model that is based on the concept of object or iented pr ogramming. It h as c ome i nto ex istence t o m eet t he i ncreasingly complex r eal w orld app lications w hich ar e not being easily s olved by ot her m odel. A class r epresents bot h ob ject at tributes as w ell as t he beh avior of t he ent ity. T he instance of the class- object contains both data as well as their relationship. An object includes information about the relationship between the facts within the object as well as information about relationship with other objects. Objects also contain all operations that can be performed on it.

The object-oriented data model is differently proposed by different researchers and has no s ingle c ommon database s tructure like t he ot her data m odels. O ODM forms t he basis f or t he o bject-oriented d atabase m anagement system (O ODBMS). T hey are mainly used in engineering and design, financial services, telecommunications etc. This model is represented by UML (Unified Modeling Language) class diagrams.

The main advantage of OODM is that it is closer to the real word and hence is able to deal w ith m ore c omplex pr oblems v ery e asily. T he m ain dem erit of O ODM is no established standards and hence is not that much widespread accepted.
# 3.9 COMPARISON BETWEEN DATA MODEL

We have d iscussed all the entire dat a models and based on some specialized characteristics and some merits and demerits we compare all the models. The table given below shows the comparison:

	Characteri	Organizati	Identi	Access	Data	Structural
Data Model	stics	on	fy	Langua	Independe	Independe
				ge	nce	nce
Hierarchical	Best	File,	Recor	Procedu	Yes	No
	suitable for	Records	d	ral		
	1:M		based			
	relationshi					
	р					
Network	Ability to	File,	Recor	Procedu	Yes	No
	handle all	Records	d	ral		
	types of		based			
	relationshi					
	p, including					
	M:N					
Relational	Conceptual	Tables	Value	Non-	Yes	Yes
	Simplicity,		based	Procedu		
	easier			ral		
	database					
	design.					
Entity	Visual	Entity	Value	Non-	Yes	Yes
Relationship	representat	Sets/	based	Procedu		
	ion makes	Objects		ral		
	it very easy					
	to					
	understand					

Object	No	Objects	Recor	Procedu	Yes	Yes
Oriented	standardiz		d	ral		
	ed method		based			
	available to					
	represent					
	the model.					
				-	l	

#### Table-1 Comparison between data model

# 3.10Check your progress

- 1. Explain the importance data model.
- 2. Define entity, attributes and relationships.
- 3. Discuss hierarchical model in detail.
- 4. Explain in detail the network model.
- 5. Write a short note on ER model.

# Unit 4: Database Design

### **Unit Structure**

- 4.1. Learning Objectives
- 4.2. Introduction
- 4.3. Characteristics of a table
- 4.4. Keys
- Integrity policies 4.5.
- Relational set operators 4.6.
- 4.7. Attributes
- 4.8. Relationships contained in relational database
- 4.9. Connectivity and cardinality
- 4.10. Relationship Strength
- 4.11. Relationship degree
- 4.12. Database design process
- 4.13. Anomalies in database
- 4.14. Check your progress

# 4.1 LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this unit student should be able to:

- decide an entity and its attributes.
- understand database design process and the commonly occurred anomalies in it.

# **4.2 INTRODUCTION**

A table is viewed as a two dimensional organization consisting of rows and columns. A table m any a t imes is al so c alled a *relation* because t he r elational m odel ar chitect composed of r ows and c olumns. A table c onsists of a c ollection of as sociated entity occurrences that is an entity set. For example a DESIGNATION table contains the entity occurrences, each representing a separate designation of an employee.

With the help of table view of data it makes it easy for a database designer to design the database.

# **4.3 CHARACTERISTICS OF A RELATIONAL TABLE**

The eight characteristics of a relational table are mentioned below:

- 1. A table is perceived as a two-dimensional arrangement structure of rows and columns.
- 2. Tuple corresponds to a single entity event contained in the entity set.
- 3. Every relational table column represents an attribute, which should have a distinct name.
- 4. The intersection of a row and column represents a single value in the table.
- 5. Every value in the column must correspond to the same data type and format.
- 6. Each column can have a definite range of values know as attribute domain.
- 7. The sequence of rows and columns is irrelevant in DBMS.
- 8. Every table must have an attribute or its combination that can distinctively identify a tuple.

#### Table: DESIGNATION

Desig_id	Desig_name
1	CEO
2	Manager
3	Supervisor
4	Technician
5	Officer

Desig\_id= Designation ID, Desig\_name= Designation name

#### Table-2 DESIGNATION table attribute values

- **i.** The D ESIGNATION t able i s v iewed as a t wo d imensional ar rangement consisting of two columns and five rows.
- ii. Each row in the DESIGNATION table illustrates a single entity occurrence within the entity s et. F or example as shown in the figure-12 her e any Desig\_id=4, represents the other characteristics that's d esignation name in the g iven table, the designation name in this case is Technician which denotes a record.
- iii. Here each column is viewed as an attribute and should have unique name.
- iv. As shown in the given figure the entire attribute in a given column must have a same data type. Like designation name field has a data type as character.
- v. Here the designation ID has a range of possible values that are between 1 to 5, which is known as range of domain values.
- vi. The series of rows and columns is irrelevant in DBMS.
- vii. Each table in RDBMS must have a column/attribute which contains set of unique values and t hat a ttribute c an be as signed as a P rimary Key (PK). Assigning a PK attribute to a field, does not allow the field to remain either empty or repeated.

# 4.4 KEYS

Keys in RDMS are significant as they are used to ensure that each tuple in a table is uniquely i dentifiable. A key c onsists of one or m ore a ttributes that det ermine ot her attributes. For example an Designation ID identifies all the field in the designation table.

A primary key plays an important role in the relational environment, where the key's role is bas ed on t he c oncept of det ermination. E ach t able m ust hav e a at tribute t hat i s unique and is able to identify the unique records of the table.

Similarly the foreign key contains either matching values (primary key of another table) or nul ls. T he t able t hat m akes us e of t hat f oreign k ey is s aid t o e xhibit *referential integrity*. In simple w ords referential integrity m eans that if the foreign k ey c ontains a value, that value should refer to an existing valid record in another relation.

In the context of dat abase table, the statement "A determines B", indicates that if y ou know the value of at tribute A, y ou c an look u p into the value of B. F or example the knowing the Student\_ID in the S TUDENT table we are able to look up his/her name, score, mobile number etc. Therefore attributes of the student table can be represented by the statement "Student\_ID d etermines name, s core, s em, m obile". This statement can be simply denoted by:

Student\_ID -> Name, Score, Sem, Mobile\_num

The c oncept of de termination is important as it us ed in the definition of a c entral relational database concept known as functional dependency. The functional dependency can be defined most easily this way: "The attribute A determines B if all the rows in the table that agree in the value for attribute A also agree in value for attribute B".

Also "If an a ttribute B is functionally dependent on a composite key A but not on a ny subset of that composite key, the attribute B is fully functionally dependent on A".

Composite key is a combination of 2 more attributes that is used to uniquely identify a record in a given table. Within the broad key classification special keys can be defined as given the figure 1.14

КеуТуре	Definition
Super key	An attribute that uniquely identifies each row in a table

Candidate	A minimal (irreducible) superkey.
key	
Primary key	A c andidate k ey t hat is s elected t o uni quely i dentify al l ot her
	attributes in a column and does not contain a null value
Secondary	An attribute used strictly for data retrieval purposes.
key	
Foreign key	An attribute in one table whose value must match the primary key
	in another table.

Table-3 Relational Database Keys

# 4.5 INTEGRITY POLICIES

For a good relational database design integrity rules are very significant and they must be f ollowed. S everal R DMS i mplement i ntegrity r ules w ithout h uman i ntervention b ut care s hould be t aken t hat a ny ap plication des ign m ust m atch t he r eferential i ntegrity rules which are summarized in the figure 1.15:

Entity	Description
Integrity	
Requirement	All primary keys are unique and cannot be null
Purpose	Each row will ha ve a unique identity and the foreign key can reference
	primary key values. E.g. No Student ID can be duplicated as well as it
	cannot be null.
Referential	Description
Integrity	
Requirement	A foreign must match with the primary key value in a table to which it is
Purpose	related, or sometimes may have a null entry.
	It may be possible for an at tribute NOT to have a corresponding value,
	but an invalid entry is not possible. E.g. An AGENT has yet not assigned
	any CUSTOMER.

As shown in the Table-5, the STUDENT table does not contain a repeated Student ID as well as does not contain null which represents entity integrity.

Student_ID	Name	Sem	Score	MOB
S001	Amit	I	75	9898989898
S002	Neha		83	9090909090
S003	Hem	I	87	7878568923

Table-5Sample STUDENT table

Similarly the tables AGENT and CUSTOMER are shown in the Table-6, where the agent Ramesh and Joy has yet not assigned any customer, and Agent ID attribute in the Customer table is null for the customer named sumit and harsh.

Agent_ID	A_name	МОВ
1	Nilanshu	7539518526
2	Shyam	4567891236
3	Ramesh	3216549875
4	Joy	3578529631

Customer_ID	C_Fname	C_Lname	City	Agent_id
1	Sumit	Verma	Ahmedabad	
2	Nancy	Joseph	Surat	1
3	Jenny	Shah	Rajkot	2
4	Harsh	Modi	Surat	

Table-6 Sample AGENT and CUSTOMER table

## **4.6 RELATIONAL SET OPERATORS**

The data in the RDBMS are of limited worth until we can manipulate to generate useful information. In this section we will be describing about eight relational set operators populated by relational algebra to implement various operations. The operators that we are going to discuss are: UNION, INTERSECT, DIFFERENCE, PRODUCT, SELECT, PROJECT, JOIN and DIVIDE.

**UNION:** This operation combines all the rows from two tables, excluding the rows which are ha ving dup licate r ecords. Here b oth the table m ust have the same fields and al so share same number of columns. The example of union operation is shown in the figure-12:

Pro_i	P_nam	Pric
d	е	е
1	P1	250
2	P2	300
3	P3	350

Figure 12 (a)

UNION

Pro_id	P_name	Price

4	P4	400
5	P5	450
1	P1	250

Figure 12 (b)

Pro_id	P_name	Price	
1	P1	250	
2	P2	300	
3	P3	350	
4	P4	400	
5	P5	450	
Figure 12 UNION operation			

**INTERSECT:** This oper ation displays only the records that are common on both the tables. The result of the intersection operation is given below:





**DIFFERENCE:** It displays all the records in one table that are not found in a nother table. The result of the difference operation is shown below:



#### Figure-14DIFFERENCE operation

**PRODUCT:** The product op eration results in all the possible p air of rows from the two tables. This operation is also known as Cartesian product operation. For example if one table has 3 records and an other table has 2 r ecords the product operation will yield 6 records. The output of product operation is shown b elow, where product operation is performed between Product table and Supplier table:

PRODUCT

Pro_i	P_nam	Pric
d	е	е
P1	А	250
P2	В	300
P3	С	350

SUP_id	S_Name	CITY
S1	RKT	AHM
S2	MBD	AHM

Pro_id	P_name	Price	SUP_id	S_Name	CITY
P1	A	250	S1	RKT	AHM
P1	A	250	S2	MBD	AHM
P2	В	300	S1	RKT	AHM
P2	В	300	S2	MBD	AHM
P3	С	350	S1	RKT	AHM
P3	С	350	S2	MBD	AHM

Figure -15The result of PRODUCT operation

**SELECT:** This operations displays all the records from the given table that satisfies a given c riteria. T his o peration is a look nown as R ESTRICT op eration. F or example suppose w e w ant to list all the records from the above table w here the price of the product is greater than 350, then the output of select operation is shown in the figure 17.

Pro_i	P_nam	Pric
d	е	е
P1	А	250
P2	В	300
P3	С	350
P4	D	400

P5	E	450

SELECT ALL(Price>350)

Pro_id	P_name	Price
P4	D	400
P5	E	450

#### Figure -16SELECT operation

**PROJECT:** This o peration y ields all the values for the selected attributes, which is a vertical subset of a given table. The result of PROJECT operation is shown in the figure 17:

Pro_i	P_nam	Pric
d	е	е
P1	A	250
P2	В	300
P3	С	350
P4	D	400
P5	E	450

Price	
250	
300	
350	
400	
450	

**PROJECT Price Yields** 

#### Figure -17PROJECT operation

**JOIN:** Join a llows i nformation t o b e combined f rom t wo or m ore t ables. T here ar e several forms of join that are explained below.

A natural join links the tables by selecting only those rows with the common values in their common attribute, which is a three step process. First a P RODUCT operation is implemented among the tables included in the join. Secondly a SELECT operation is performed on the output to get the rows for which foreign key is present. And finally PROJECT operation is performed on the results of second operation to get the selected attributes and eliminate the du plicate tuples. The ultimate outcome of the natural join produces a s et of a r ecord that does not include m atchless pairs and o ffer o nly the copies of the matches. Example of natural join and its operations are explained in the figures given below:

CUSTOMER TABLE				
CUST_ID NAME PINCODE A_II				
C001	Sanjay	382330	A001	
C002	Rahul	382421	A002	
C003	Pankti	358965	A003	
C004	Prachi	365898	A001	

AGENT TABLE			
A_ID	A_NAME		
A001	Hari		
A002	Jay		
A003	Om		

Table-7 Sample tables considered for join illustrations

CUST_ID	NAME	PINCODE	CUSTOMER.A_ID	AGENT. A_ID	A_NAME
C001	Sanjay	382330	A001	A001	Hari
C001	Sanjay	382330	A001	A002	Jay
C001	Sanjay	382330	A001	A003	Om
C002	Rahul	382421	A002	A001	Hari
C002	Rahul	382421	A002	A002	Jay
C002	Rahul	382421	A002	A003	Om
C003	Pankti	358965	A003	A001	Hari
C003	Pankti	358965	A003	A002	Jay
C003	Pankti	358965	A003	A003	Om
C004	Prachi	365898	A001	A001	Hari
C004	Prachi	365898	A001	A002	Jay
C004	Prachi	365898	A001	A003	Om

#### Table-8Natural Join, Step 1: PRODUCT

The next operation performed in the natural join is a SELECT operation that is shown in the Table-9

CUSTOMER.A\_ID CUST\_ID NAME PINCODE AGENT. A\_ID A\_NAME A001 C001 Sanjay 382330 A001 Hari C002 382421 A002 A002 Rahul Jay C003 358965 A003 A003 Pankti Om A001 A001 365898 C004 Prachi Hari

Table-9 Natural Join, Step 2: SELECT

Finally the last operation implemented in natural join is PROJECT that is shown in the Table-10

CUST_ID	NAME	PINCODE	AGENT. A_ID	A_NAME
C001	Sanjay	382330	A001	Hari
C002	Rahul	382421	A002	Jay
C003	Pankti	358965	A003	Om
C004	Prachi	365898	A001	Hari

Table-10 Natural Join, Step 2: PROJECT

Another form of join is known as equijoin that links the tables on the basics of equality condition t hat c ompares s pecific at tributes of eac h t able. Here t he out put d oes not eliminate the du plicate c olumn v alues. The equijoin t akes the nam e from the o perator that it uses, if any other comparison operator is used, the join is called a theta join.

Lastly the outer join, in which the matched pairs would be retained and any unmatched values in the other table would be left null.

**DIVIDE:** This oper ation us es one s ingle-column t able as t he di visor and o ne t wo attribute table as the dividend. The tables used in this operation must have an attribute in common.

Key	Location
А	34
В	45
С	25
С	36
D	25
D	72
С	12

#### DIVIDE



# **Location** 25

#### Figure 18 Location Table is the outcome of the DIVIDE operations

Here the first table is divided by second table, where both the tables share a common attribute "KEY" and does not share LOCATION. The output yields only the value that is associated with both "C" and "D".

# **4.7 ATTRIBUTES**

Attributes ar e considered t o be the c haracteristics of t he entities. F or ex ample t he CUSTOMER entity consists of many attributes like CUST\_ID, NAME, PINCODE, EMAIL etc. Here in this s ection we will discuss about various points to b e k ept i n m ind w hile deciding the attributes in a given entity.

**Required and Optional attributes:** A r equired at tribute is an f iled t hat m ust have a value or w hich c annot be I eft nul I. F or e xample C UST\_ID a nd N AME ar e r equired attributes in the CUSTOMER table. On the contrary a customer may have an email or may not so the field EMAIL in the CUSTOMER table is an optional attribute as it can be left null.

**Domains:** All the attributes have their domain, which means a s et of possible values that can be accepted by that particular filed. For example minimum and maximum value for s emesters in the MSc(IT) course can be between one and four. S o the domain of possible values for the field semester is either 1/2/3/4.

**Primary key:** Primary key is the identifier that is used to identify each record or tuple uniquely. Also it cannot be null. For example C UST\_ID in the C USTOMER table is a primary key that uniquely identifies each customer's record and which cannot be null.

**Composite keys:** When w e us e m ore t han one i dentifier or pr imary k ey t o u niquely identify a record in a table, it is known as a composite key. For example CUST\_ID and ACCOUNT\_NUM can be combined to create a composite key as a customer may have different types of account in a bank,

**Composite and simple attributes:** A c omposite at tribute is not be baffled with composite k ey. It is an attribute t hat c an befurther s ub divided t o yield ad ditional attributes. F or example an attribute F ULL\_NAME c an befurther s ub d ivided i nto FIRST\_NAME, MID\_NAME and LAST\_NAME. A simple attribute cannot be further sub divided. For example gender, age etc.

**Single-valued attributes:** An a ttribute that c an have o nly s ingle value is k nown as single valued attribute. For example AADHAR number of any Indian citizen is considered to be a single-valued attribute.

**Multivalued attributes:** Those at tributes t hat c an have multiple values f or example color of a c ar, de gree of a s tudent, ar ea o f i nterest of a c andidate, h obbies et c ar e considered to be the multivalued attributes.

**Derived attributes:** An at tributes value t hat c an be c alculated from ot her attributes value is known as derived attribute. For example the attribute AGE can be derived from the date of birth field. Similarly amount of GST to be paid, percentage of a student etc are the examples of derived attributes.

# 4.8 RELATIONSHIPS CONTAINED IN RELATIONAL DATABASE

Relationships that are defined in relational database are of three types:

- One-to-many (1:M)
- One-to-one (1:1)
- Many-to-many (M:N)

**The 1:M relationship:** The 1:M relationship is the relational database standard. To this how this relationship is modeled and implement let us consider a simple example of COUNTRY and STATE entity.



#### Figure-19:M relationship between Country and State table

As shown the figure 19 the one COUNTRY can have many STATES, so there is a oneto-many relationship between two tables.

**The 1:1 relationship:** This relationship represents that one entity can be related to only one another entity and vice versa. For example one department chair-a professor-can chair only one department and one department can have only one department chair.





**The M:N relationship:** A M:N relationship is not directly supported in the relational database environment. As ample e xample of M:N r elationship c an b e c onsidered between MOBILE and FEATURES tables. Here one MOBILE can have many features, also the same feature can be there in many MOBILES.

The way to implement M:N relationship in relational database environment is to change the M:N r elationship t o *two* 1:M r elationship. This c an be do ne by ad ding a t hird associative en tity or a br idge t able bet ween t wo t ables. F igure 1. 31 r epresents t he solution t o t he gi ven pr oblem. H ere t he br idge t able i s " Mobile\_has\_feature", w hich specifies which mobile has which features.



Figure-21 Changing the M:N relationship to two 1:M relationship

# **4.9 CONNECTIVITY AND CARDINALITY**

Cardinality s ignifies t he m inimum and t he m aximum num ber of en tity oc currences associated with one occurrence of the related entity. In entity relationship modeling it is represented by using the format (n,m), where the first parameter represents m inimum number of linked entities and the second parameter represents the maximum number of entity occurrences. The below figure shows the example of PROFESSOR and CLASS entity.





# **4.10 RELATIONSHIP STRENGTH**

The notion of relationship strength is based on how the primary key of a related entity is defined. T here are b asically two t ypes of r elationship s trength w eak and strong relationships which are discussed below:

**Weak Relationships:** It is also known as Non-identifying relationship. It exists when primary key of a related entity does not contain a primary key component of the parent entity. By default relationships are recognized by having the primary key of the parent entity a ppear as a foreign key on the related entity. For example, suppose that the COURSE and CLASS entities are defined as:

COURSE (CRS\_CODE, DEPT\_CODE, CRS\_DESC, CRS\_CREDIT)

CLASS (**CLASS\_CODE**, CRS\_CODE, CLASS\_SECTION, PROF\_ID, CLASS\_TIME) In this c ase a w eak r elationship e xists bet ween the above t wo en tities bec ause t he CRS\_CODE in CLASS entity is only an foreign key.

**Strong Relationships:** A strong relationship is also known as identifying relationship. It exists when the primary key of a related entity contains primary key component of a parent entity. For example if we consider the COURSE and CLASS entities as:

COURSE (**CRS\_CODE**, DEPT\_CODE, CRS\_DESC, CRS\_CREDIT)

CLASS (CRS\_CODE, CLASS\_SECTION, PROF\_ID, CLASS\_TIME)

This indicates a s trong relationship e xists between the entities COURSE and CLASS, because t he C LASS e ntity c ontains a c omposite pr imary k ey of C RS\_CODE and CLASS\_SECTION.

# **4.11 RELATIONSHIP DEGREE**

A r elationship de gree s pecifies t he num ber of e ntities t hat ar e associated w ith a relationship. T hey ar e of s everal types l ike un ary, binary, t ernary an d hi gher degree relationship that are discussed below:

**Unary relationships:** An example of the unary relationship is shown in the figure 1.33, where an E mployee ent ity is a supervisor for on e or more workers who are aga in employees within t hat entity. Such a relationship is all so known as recursive relationships. Recursive relationships exits between the occurrences of the same entity set.



#### Figure-23 Unary relationship

**Binary relationships:** A binary relationship exists when there are two entities that are related with each other as shown in the figure 1.34. It is the most frequent relationship that exists in the relational database. A basic example of two Entities CITY and AREA table is shown below that are having one-to-many relationship.



Figure-24 Binary relationship

**Ternary and Higher degree relationships:** A ternary relationship involves relationship among t hree di fferent e ntities. L et's t ake an e xample of t hree e ntities D OCTOR, PATIENT and MEDICINE. Here t he d octor g ives one or m ore prescriptions t o t he patients. P atients c an visit one or m ore d octors and get d ifferent prescriptions. O ne medicine can be there in one or more prescriptions that are given by doctor to patients. An example of ternary relationship is as shown in figure 1.35



Figure-25 Ternary relationship

# 4.12 DAT ABASE DESIGN PROCESS

Database d esign i s a pr ocedure of creating a c omplete d ata m odel of a database consisting of a ll t he l ogical a nd p hysical design alternatives and p hysical s torage considerations nee ded t o c reate a des ign of a dat abase. It s hould al ways r eflect t he information s ystem and s hould u ndergo ev aluation and r evision w ithin a f ramework known as Database life cycle. There are two methods of database design:

✓ Top-down vs. Bottom-up design



Figure-26 Top-down vs. Bottom-up design

In top dow n appr oach we identify the dat aset and define the dat a elements. In bottom-up approach we identify the data elements first and then we group them into datasets.



#### ✓ Centralized vs. Decentralized design

Figure-27 A centralized design approach

In centralized database design is conducted by a single person or a small team as s hown in t he f igure 1. 37 on t he c ontrary in dec entralized database design large number of relationship and complex relations exits and are spread across multiple sites as shown in the figure 1.38



Figure-28 A decentralized design approach

#### DAT ABASE LIFE CYCLE (DBLC):

**Phase 1: Database Initial Study:** In the initial study we analyze the organization structure and its oper ating environment. We define the problem and list all the constraints. We need to also state the main objectives of the proposed system along with its scope and boundaries.



Figure-29 Phases in DBLC

**Phase 2: Database Design:** It is the most critical phase where the DBA has to focus on data r equirements c reate a c onceptual d esign, S elect t he D BMS s oftware, c reate a logical design and create a physical design.

*Conceptual Design:* In c onceptual des ign w e m ap the d atabase with the r eal w orld entities. H ere w e per form dat a an alysis an d r equirements, de velop an d E R and normalize to its required forms and lastly we verify the data model that is developed. *DBMS Software selection:* The f actors that m ust b e c onsidered at the time of D BMS software selection are:

- ✓ Underlying model of database
- ✓ DBMS features and tools

- ✓ DBMS hardware requirements
- ✓ Portability of the DBMS
- ✓ COST

*Logical Design:* The logical design translates the conceptual design into internal model. Here the logical model design components are Tables, Indexes, Views, Transactions etc.

*Physical Design:* In physical design we need to specify the data storage and access characteristics because this becomes very difficult in case of distributed systems.

**Phase 3: Implementation and coding:** This phase includes creation of special storage constructs for the end user tables. It also gives solution to other issues like performance, security, backup and recovery, maintaining industry standards and managing concurrency controls.

**Phase 4: Testing and evaluation:** In this phase the database is tested and fine tuned for per formance, i ntegrity, c oncurrent ac cess and s ecurity c onstraints. T his phase is implemented in par allel with ap plication pr ogramming. If the testing fails then following actions are taken:

- ✓ Fine tuning based on reference models
- ✓ Alterations in the logical design
- ✓ Updating in the physical design
- ✓ Modernize or change the DBMS software or hardware in which its implemented

**Phase 5: Operation:** In this p hase d atabase is considered t o b e op erational and t he process of s ystem e valuation begins. D uring t his phase s ome u nforeseen problems may occur and demand for a change.

**Phase 6: Maintenance and Evaluation:** In this phase we implement different maintenance techniques like preventive maintenance, corrective maintenance, adaptive maintenance, as signment of access per mission, pr oducing database s tatistics f or monitoring p erformance, c onducting s ecurity a udits bas ed o n s ystem-generated statistics.

# 4.13 ANOMALIES IN DATABASE

Anomalies ar e i n f act t roubles t hat c an ar ise in poorly designed, no n-normalized databases. Non-normalized databases are those databases which don't follow database standard r ules i n or der t o des ign and d evelop i t. There ar e s everal c ategories of anomalies that can exist while referencing attributes in the related tables. Suppose we consider h ere t wo entities as STUDENT a nd COURSE and t he s ample r ecords ar e shown below:

STUDENT_ID	NAME	EMAIL	AGE
S001	Vivek	v@gmail.com	25
S002	Abhi	ab@ymail.com	27
S003	Aniket	an@yahoo.com	32

Figure 1.40 Student table

COURSE_ID	NAME	STUDENT_ID
C1	Python Programming	S001
C2	Networking	S003
C3	Java Programming	S001

Figure 1.41 Course table

**Insertion anomaly:** If a r ecord i s i nserted i n a r eferenced at tribute and t he corresponding foreign key is not present in the primary table (STUDENT), it will result in insertion anomaly. For example if we try to insert S005 in the COURSE table, it will not permit.

**Deletion and updation anomaly:** If a r ecord is deleted or edited from r eferenced relation and referenced field value is used by referencing attribute in associated relation, it will not permit deleting the record from referenced association. For example if we try to delete the record from the STUDENT table where STUDENT\_ID is S003, it will n ot permit to delete the record. In order to a void s uch a s ituation we can use CASCADE UPDATE and CASCADE DELETE while query processing.

# 4.14Check your progress

- 1. Define table and explain its characteristics by giving examples.
- 2. List and explain the importance of integrity policies in relational DBMS.
- 3. Discuss relational set operators in detail.
- 4. What are the points to be kept in mind while deciding the attributes for a given entity?
- 5. Write a short note on relationship degree.
- 6. Discuss the database design process.
- 7. List and explain the anomalies faced in the database.

# Block-2 Relational Data Model and Introduction to Oracle Server

# Unit 1: Functional Dependency and Normalization

## **Unit Structure**

- 2.1. Learning Objectives & Outcomes
- 2.2. Introduction
- 2.3. Functional Dependency
- 2.4. Decomposition
- 2.5. Closer Set of Functional Dependencies
- 2.6. Normalizations
- 2.7. Let Us Sum Up
- 2.8. Check your progress: Possible Answers
- 2.9. Assignments
- 2.10. Further Reading

# **1.1 LEARNING OBJECTIVES & OUTCOMES**

The objective of this chapter is to make the students,

- To learn and understand Dependencies and how to define it.
- To understand the Armstrong's Axioms of FDs.
- To understand the decomposition process of database relation.
- To learn normalization process and different normal forms.

#### Outcome:

At the end of this unit,

- Students will be completely aware with process of Dependencies and its different types like F unction D ependencies, F ully Functional D ependencies, M ultivalued Dependencies, Join Dependencies etc.
- Students will come to know the decomposition process and its types.
- Students will come to know normalization and different normal forms.

# **1.2 INTRODUCTION**

Functional dependencies (FDs) pl ay a k eyr ole i n differentiating good dat abase designs from database design. A functional dependency is a type of constraint that is a generalization of the notion a key Functional dependencies. FD's are constraints on well-formed r elations and r epresent f ormalism on t he i nfrastructure of r elation. T he determination of functional dependencies is an important part of designing databases in t he r elational m odel, an d i n dat abase nor malization and de nor malization. T he functional dependencies, al ong w ith t he at tribute d omains, are s elected s o as t o generate c onstraints t hat w ould e xclude as m uch d ata inappropriate t o t he us er domain from the system as possible.

Normalization (NF) is a s ystematic w ay of ensuring that a d atabase s tructure is suitable for g eneral-purpose q uerying and free of c ertain u ndesirable c haracteristics like i nsertion, u pdate, and de letion an omalies; that c ould I ead t o a I oss of d ata

integrity. T he nor malf orms of r elational da tabase t heory pr ovide c riteria f or determining a table's degree of vulnerability to logical inconsistencies and anomalies. The normal forms are applicable to individual tables; to say that an entire database is in normal form n is to say that all of its tables are in normal form n.

# **1.3 FUNCTIONAL DEPENDENCY**

A functional dependency (FD) is a r elationship bet ween two at tributes, t ypically between t he P K and ot her n on-key attributes within a table. F or an y r elation R, attribute Y is functionally dependent on attribute X, if for every valid instance of X, that value of X uniquely determines the value of Y. T his relationship is indicated by the representation below:

X→Y Or XàY

The left side of the above FD diagram is called the Determinant (X), and the right side is the Dependent (Y).

Х	Y	
1	1	
2	4	
3	9	
4	16	
2	4	
7	9	
Table: A		

Х	Y	
1	1	
2	4	
3	9	
4	16	
2	10	
7	9	
Table: B		

Above Table: A illustrates that  $X \rightarrow Y$ , since for each value of X there is as sociated one and only one value of Y. W hile Table: B illustrates that X does not functionally determine Y, since for X = 2 there is associated more than one value of Y (4, 10).

Example: Consider the database having following tables.

SNo	SName	Status	City
S1	Nilesh	20	Ahmedabad
S2	Vinod	10	Patan
S3	Rahul	20	Ahmedabad
S4	Jayesh	20	Surat

Table: Supplier

Here, if we know the value of SNo, We can obtain value of SName, Status and City. So, we can say that SName, Status and City are functionally depends on SNo. FD is represented as: SNo  $\rightarrow$ { SName,Status,City}

SNo	PNo	Qty
S1	P1	270
S1	P2	300
S1	P3	700
S2	P1	270
S2	P2	450
S3	P2	280

Table: Shipment

In this case Qty is FD on combination of SNo and PNo, because each combination of SNo and PNo results only one Qty. FD is represented as:  $\{SNo, PNo\} \rightarrow Qty$ 

#### 1.3.1. FULLY FUNCTIONAL DEPENDENCY (FFD)

Fully Functional Dependence (FFD) is defined, as Attribute Y is FFD on attribute X, if it is FD on X and not FD on any proper subset of X. For example, in relation Supplier, different c ities m ay ha vet he s ame s tatus. It m ay b e pos sible t hat c ities I ike Ahmedabad, S urat m ay ha ve the s ame s tatus 20. So, t he C ity is not FD on S tatus. But, the combination of SNo, Status can give only on e corresponding City, because SNo is unique. Thus,

#### $\{SNo, Status\} \rightarrow City$

It m eans c ity is F D on c omposite at tribute (SNo, Status) how ever C ity is not fully functional dependent on this composite attribute, which is explained below:

Here Y is FD on X, but X has two proper subsets SNo and Status; city is FD on one proper subset of X. **SNo**  $\rightarrow$  **City** 

According to FFD definition Y m ust not b e FD . on an y proper subset of X, but here City is FD in one subset of X i.e. SNo, so City is not FFD on (SNo, Status)

# 1.3.2. ARMSTRONG'S AXIOMS OF FUNCTIONAL DEPENDENCIES (INFERENCE RULES)

As et of r ules t hat m ay be us ed t o i nfer additional de pendencies w as proposed by William W. Armstrong in 1974. These rules (or axioms) are a complete set of rules in that all possible functional dependencies may be derived from them. Below given are the three most important rules for FD:

- Reflexive Rule:
   If X is a s et of at tributes an d Y is s ubset of X, t hen X
  holds a value of Y.
- Augmentation When x → y holds, and c is attribute s et, then ac → bc
   Rule: also holds. That is adding attributes which do not change the basic dependencies.
- Transitivity Rule: This r ule i s v ery m uch s imilar t o t he t ransitive r ule i n algebra. if x→ y holds and y → z holds, then x → z also holds.

Further ax ioms m ay b e derived from t he a bove a lthough t he a bove t hree a xioms are sound and complete in that they do not generate any incorrect functional dependencies (soundness) an d t hey do generate all possible f unctional dependencies that can be inferred from F (completeness). The most important additional axioms are:

a. Union Rule:	If $X \rightarrow Y$ and $X \rightarrow Z$ hold, then $X \rightarrow YZ$ holds.
b. Decomposition Rule:	If $X \rightarrow YZ$ holds, then so do $X \rightarrow Y$ and $X \rightarrow Z$ .

#### A. Trivial Functional Dependency

The T rivial d ependency is a s et of at tributes which are c alled a t rivial if the s et of attributes are included in that attribute. So,  $X \rightarrow Y$  is a trivial functional dependency if Y is a subset of X.

Example: Consider a Employee table

Empld	EmpName	EmpContact
1001	Jayesh	8625610860
	Patel	
1002	Viral Vyas	7300456780
1003	Chirag	6625674610
	Prajapati	

Table: Employee

 $\{Empld, EmpName\} \rightarrow EmpName$  is a trivial functional dependency as a EmpName is a subset of  $\{Empld, EmpName\}$ . If we knows the value of Empld and EmpName then the value of Empld c an be uni quely d etermined. Also, Empld  $\rightarrow$  Empld & EmpName  $\rightarrow$  EmpName are trivial dependencies too.

#### **B. Non-Trivial Functional Dependency**

If a f unctional dependency  $X \rightarrow Y$  holds true where Y is not a subset of X then this dependency is called Non-Trivial functional dependency.

**Example:** Consider a Employee table. Following functional dependencies are Non-trivial.

### Empld $\rightarrow$ EmpName (EmpName is not a subset of Empld) Empld $\rightarrow$ EmpContact (EmpContact is not a subset of Empld)

If a functional dependency  $X \rightarrow Y$  holds true where X intersection Y is null then this dependency is called **completely Non-Trivial FD**.

#### C. Transitive Functional Dependency

Transitive F unctional D ependency h appens w hen it is indirectly f ormed by t wo functional dependencies. This dependency can only occur in a relation with minimum three attributes.

Example: Consider a Employee table

### EmpId $\rightarrow$ EmpName (If we know EmpId, we know its Name) EmpName $\rightarrow$ EmpContact (If we know EmpName, we know its Contact)

Therefor as per rule of transitive dependency; **EmpId**  $\rightarrow$  **EmpContact** should hold, that make sense if we know the EmpId, we can know his Contact.

# 1.4 DECOMPOSITION

A f unctional **decomposition** is the process of breaking d own the functions of an organization into progressively greater levels of det ail. The decomposition of a relation s cheme R consists of replacing the relation s chema by two or more relation schemas that e ach contain a subset of the attributes of R and together include all

attributes i n R. D ecomposition h elps i n eliminating s ome of t he problems of bad design such as redundancy, inconsistencies and anomalies.

Lossy D ecomposition: The decomposition of relation R into R1 and R2 is lossy when the join of R1 and R2 does not yield the same relation as in R. One of the disadvantages of decomposition into two or more relational schemes (or tables) is that some information is lost during retrieval of original relation or table. Spurious rows are generated when a natural join is applied to the relations in the decomposition.

Lossless Join D ecomposition: The decomposition of relation R into R1 and R2 is lossless when the join of R1 and R2 yield the same relation as in R. A relational table is decomposed into two or more smaller tables, in such a way that the designer can capture the precise content of the original table by joining the decomposed parts. This is called lossless-join (or non-additive join) decomposition. Spurious tuples are not generated when a natural joined is applied to the relations in the decomposition.

**Dependency-Preserving Decomposition:** The dependency pr eservation decomposition is a nother property of decomposed relational dat abase s chema D in which each functional dependency X -> Y s pecified in F either a ppeared directly in one of the relation s chemas R i in the decomposed D or c ould b e i nferred from the dependencies that appear in some Ri.

Decomposition D = {  $R_1$  ,  $R_2$ ,  $R_3$ ,...,  $R_m$ } of R is said to be dep endency-preserving with respect to F if the union of the projections of F on each  $R_i$ , in D is equivalent to F. The dependencies are preserved because each dependency in F represents a constraint on the d atabase. If decomposition is not dependency-preserving, s ome dependency is lost in the decomposition.

# **1.5 CLOSURE SET OF FUNCTIONAL DEPENDENCIES**

A **Closure** is a set of FDs is a set of all possible FDs that can be derived from a given set of FDs. It is also referred as a **complete** set of FDs. If F is used to donate the set of FDs for relation R, then a c losure of a s et of FDs implied by F is denoted by  $F^+$ . Let's consider the set F of functional dependencies given below:

F = {A-> B, B -> C, C -> D}

from F, it is possible to derive following dependencies.

A-> A ...By using Rule-4, Self-Determination.

A-> B ...Already given in F.

A -> C ...By using rule-3, Transitivity.

A -> D ...By using rule-3, Transitivity.

Now, b y app lying Union R ule, it is possible to derive A<sup>+</sup> -> ABCD and it c an be denoted using A -> ABCD. All such type of FDs derived from each FD of F form a closure of F.

#### Steps to determine F<sup>+</sup>:

- Determine each set of attributes **X** that appears as a left hand side of some FD in F.
- Determine the set X<sup>+</sup> of all attributes that are dependent on X.
- X<sup>+</sup> represents a s et of attributes that ar e f unctionally d etermined b y X based on F. And, X<sup>+</sup> is called the Closure of X under F.
- All such sets of X<sup>+</sup>, in combine, Form a closure of F.

#### **Find Candidate Keys**

A super key is a s et of attributes whose closure is the set of all attributes. In other words, a s uper key is a s et of attributes you c an start from, and f ollowing functional dependencies, will lead you to a set containing each and every attribute. A candidate

key is a minimal super key. The first step to finding a candidate keys, is to find all the super keys.

**Example:** Given the Relation R with attributes ABCDE. You are given the following dependencies: A -> B, BC -> E, and ED -> A.

Since we have the functional dependencies: A -> B, BC -> E, and ED -> A, we have the following super keys:

- ABCDE (All attributes is always a super key)
- BCED (We can get attribute A through ED -> A)
- ACDE (Just add B through A -> B)
- ABCD (Just add E through BC -> E)
- ACD (We can get B through A -> B, and then we can get E through BC -> E)
- BCD (We can get E through BC -> E, and then A from ED -> A)
- CDE (We can get A through ED -> A and then B from A -> B)

We can see that only the last three are candidate keys. Since the first four can all be trimmed down. But we cannot take any attributes away from the last three super keys and s till have them remain a super key. Thus the candidate keys are: **ACD**, **BCD**, **and CDE**.

# **1.6 NORMALIZATIONS**

Database Normalization is a t echnique that helps in designing the s chema of the database in an optimal manner s o as to ensure the above points. The core idea of database n ormalization is t o d ivide the t ables into s maller s ub t ables and s tore pointers to data rather than replicating it.
Normalization results in decomposition of the original relation. It should be noted that decomposition of relation has to be always based on principles, such as functional dependence, that ensure that the original relation may be reconstructed from the decomposed relations if and when necessary. Careless decomposition of a relation can result in loss of information.

## 1.6.1 THE FIRST NORMAL FORM (1NF)

## **Definition:** A relation (table) is in 1NF if

- 1. There are no duplicate rows or tuples in the relation.
- 2. Each data value stored in the relation is single-valued
- 3. Entries in a column (attribute) are of the same kind (type).

In a 1 NF r elation the order of the tuples and attributes does not matter. The first requirement above means that the relation **must have a key**. The key may be single attribute or composite key. The first normal form defines only the basic structure of the relation and does not resolve the anomalies.

The relation STUDENT is in 1NF. The primary key of the relation is (Sno+Cno).

Sno	Sname	Address	Cno	Cname	Instructor	Offic e
101	Virol	Ahmedab	MCIT-	OOPS w ith	Amit	10
101	VITAI	ad	101	Java	Kumar	2
101	Viral	Ahmedaba	MCIT-	PDBMS	Bhavesh	10
101	VII AI	d	102		Patel	5
101	Viral	Ahmedaba	MCIT-	Networking	Jignesh	10
	VII AI	d	104	Networking	Patel	3
102	Dashrat	Ahmedab	MCIT-	Notworking	Jignesh	10
102	h	ad	104	INCLWOINING	Patel	3

## STUDENT

## 1.6.2 THE SECOND NORMAL FORM (2NF)

**Definition:** A r elation is in 2NF if it is in 1 NF and e very n on-key attribute is fully dependent on each candidate key of the relation.

Some of the points that should be noted here are:

- A relation having a single attribute key has to be in 2NF.
- In case of composite key, partial dependency on key that is part of the key is not allowed.
- 2NF tries to ensure that information in one relation is about one thing
- Non-key attributes are those that are not part of any candidate key.

These FDs of relation STUDENT can also be written as:

Sno	$\rightarrow$	Sname,	Address	(1)
Cno	$\rightarrow$	Cname, I	nstructor	(2)
Instructor	$\rightarrow$	Office		(3)

For the 2NF decomposition, we are concerned with the FDs (1) and (2) as above as they r elate t o par tial de pendence on t he key t hat is (Sno + C no). To c onvert the relation i nto 2 NF, I et us us e F Ds. As per F D (1) t he S tudent n umber uni quely determines student name and address, so one relation should be:

STUDENT1 (Sno, Sname, Address)

Sno	Sname	Address
101	Viral	Ahmedab ad
102	Dashrat	Ahmedab

h	ad
---	----

We f ind i n F D (2) t hat C ourse c ode at tribute uniquely det ermines t he name of instructor (refer t o F D 2(a)). Also t he F D (3) m eans t hat name of t he instructor uniquely determines office number. This can be written as:

Cno	$\rightarrow$	Instructor	(2 (a)) (without Cname)
Instructor	$\rightarrow$	Office (3)	
Cno	$\rightarrow$	Office (This	is transitive dependency)

Thus, FD (2) now can be rewritten as:

Cno  $\rightarrow$  Cname, Instructor, Office (2')

This FD, now gives us the second decomposed relation:

COU\_INST (Cno, Cname, Instruction, Office)

Cno	Cname	Instructor	Office	
MCIT-	OOPS w ith	Amit	102	
101	Java	Kumar	102	
MCIT-	PDBMS	Bhavesh	105	
102		Patel	100	
MCIT-	Networking	Jignesh	103	
104	Networking	Patel	105	

We hav e s uper F Ds as , bec ause ( Sno + C no) i s t he pr imary k ey of t he r elation STUDENT:

#### Sno, Cno → ALL ATTRIBUTES

All the attributes except for the key attributes that are S no and C no, however, are covered o n t he r ights ide of t he F Ds (1) (2) an d (3), t hus, m aking t he F D as redundant. But in any case we have to have a relation that joins the two decomposed relations. T his r elation w ould cover any a ttributes of S uper F D t hat hav e not b een covered by the d ecomposition and the k ey at tributes. T hus, w e need t o c reate a joining r elation as:

COURSE\_STUDENT (Sno, Cno)

Sno	Cno
101	MCIT-
101	101
101	MCIT-
101	102
101	MCIT-
101	104
102	MCIT-
102	104

So, the r elation S TUDENT in 2 NF f orm w ould b e, S TUDENT1, C OU\_INST AND COURSE\_STUDENT.

## 1.6.3 THE THIRD NORMAL FORM (3NF)

**Definition:** A relation is in third normal form, if it is in 2NF and every non-key attribute of the relation is non-transitively dependent on each candidate key of the relation.

Let us reconsider the relation 2NF (b) COU\_INST (Cno, Cname, Instruction, Office) Assume that Cname is not unique and therefore Cno is the only candidate key. The following functional dependencies exists

Cno	$\rightarrow$	Instructor (2 (a)) (without Cname)
Instructor	$\rightarrow$	Office (3)
Cno	$\rightarrow$	Office (This is transitive dependency)

The relation is however not in 3NF since the attribute 'Office' is not directly dependent on a ttribute 'Cno' but is transitively dependent on it and s hould, t herefore, be decomposed as it has all the anomalies. We need to decompose the relation 2NF(b) into the following two relations:

COURSE:

Cno	Cname	Instructo r
MCIT-101	OOPS with Java	Amit Kumar
MCIT-102	RDBMS	Bhavesh Patel
MCIT-104	Networking	Jignesh Patel

INST:

Instructor	Office
Amit Kumar	102
Bhavesh	105
Patel	100
Jignesh	103
Patel	100

Two r elations and 2 NF (a) an d 2N F (c) ar e al ready i n 3 NF. T hus, t he r elation STUDENT in 3 NF would be:

STUDENT1 (Sno, Sname, Address) COURSE (Cno, Cname, Instructor) INST (Instructor, Office) COURSE\_STUDENT (Sno, Cno)

The 3 NF is usually quite a dequate for most relational database designs. There are however some situations where a relation may be in 3 N F, but have the anomalies. For example, consider the relation NEWSTUDENT (Sno, Sname, Cno, Cname) having the set of FDs:

Sno	$\rightarrow$	Snar	ne
Sname		$\rightarrow$	Sno
Cno →		Cname	
Cname →		Cno	

The relation is in 3NF. All the attributes of this relation are part of candidate keys, but have dep endency b etween the n on-overlapping por tions of o verlapping c andidate keys. T hus, t he 3 NF m ay not e liminate all t he r edundancies and inconsistencies. Thus, there is a need of further Normalization using the BCNF.

## 1.6.4 BOYCE-CODD NORMAL FORM (BCNF)

The r elation NEWSTUDENT (Sno, S name, C no, C name) has all at tributes participating in c andidate k eys s ince all t he at tributes are as sumed t o b e u nique. Since the relation has no non-key attributes, the relation is in 2NF and also in 3NF.

**Definition:** A r elation is in B CNF, if it is in 3NF and if every determinant is a candidate key.

- A determinant is the left side of an FD
- Most relations that are in 3NF are also in BCNF. A 3NF relation is not in BCNF if all the following conditions apply.
  - 1. The candidate keys in the relation are composite keys.
  - 2. There is m ore t han one o verlapping c andidate k eys i n t he r elation, an d some attributes in the keys are overlapping and some are not overlapping.
  - There is a FD from the non-overlapping attribute(s) of one candidate key to non-overlapping attribute(s) of other candidate key.

NEWSTUDENT (Sno, Sname, Cno, Cname) Set of FDs:

Sno	$\rightarrow$	Sname		(1)
Snam	е	$\rightarrow$	Sno	(2)
Cno	$\rightarrow$	Cnan	ne (3)	
Cname →		Cno	(4)	

The relation although in 3NF, but is not in BCNF and can be decomposed on any one of the FDs in (1) & (2); and any one of the FDs in (3) & (4) as:

STUD1 (	Sno, S	name)
COUR1 (	Cno, C	name)

The third relation that will join the two relation will be: ST\_CO(Sno, Cno)

## **1.6.5 MULTIVALUED DEPENDENCIES AND 4TH NORMAL FORM**

#### A. Multivalued Dependencies:

If two or more independent relation are kept in a single relation or we can say multivalue dependency occurs when the presence of one or more rows in a table implies the presence of one or more other rows in that same table. Put another way, two attributes (or c olumns) in a t able are independent of o ne an other, but both depend on a t hird attribute. A multivalued dependency always requires at least three attributes because it consists of at least two attributes that are dependent on a third. A functional dependency is a special case of multivalued dependency. In a functional dependency X  $\rightarrow$  Y, every x determines exactly one y, never more than one.

For a dependency  $A \rightarrow B$ , if for a single value of A, multiple value of B exists, then the table m ay have multi-valued dependency. The table should have at least 3 attributes and B and C should be independent for  $A \rightarrow A$  B multivalued dependency. For example,

Person	Mobile	Food_Likes
Viral Vyas	989898009	Burger
Amit Patel	756427523	Pizza

Person  $\rightarrow \rightarrow$  mobile, Person  $\rightarrow \rightarrow$  food\_likes

#### B. Fourth normal form (4NF):

Fourth normal form (4NF) is a level of database normalization where there are no nontrivial multivalued dependencies other than a c andidate key. It builds on the first three normal f orms (1NF, 2 NF and 3 NF) and the B CNF. It s tates that, i n a ddition t o a database m eeting t he r equirements of B CNF; it m ust not c ontain m ore t han o ne multivalued dependency.

## **Properties:**

A relation R is in 4NF if and only if the following conditions are satisfied:

- 1. It should be in the Boyce-Codd Normal Form (BCNF).
- 2. the table should not have any Multi-valued Dependency.

A table with a multivalued dependency violates the normalization standard of Fourth Normal F orm because it creates un necessary redundancies and cancontribute to inconsistent data. To bring this up to 4NF, it is necessary to break this information into two tables.

Example:

Consider the database table:

Student (Sno,Sname):

Sno	Sname
101	Viral Vyas
102	Amit Patel

Course (Cno,Cname)

Cno	Cname
2001	MCA
2002	M.Sc.(IT)

When t here c ross pr oduct (Student XC ourse) is do ne it r esulted i n m ultivalued dependencies:

Sno	Sname	Cno	Cname
101	Viral Vyas	2001	MCA
101	Viral Vyas	2002	M.Sc.(IT)
102	Amit Patel	2001	MCA
102	Amit Patel	2002	M.Sc.(IT)

Multivalued dependencies (MVD) are:

## $\mathsf{SID} \rightarrow \rightarrow \mathsf{CID}; \mathsf{SID} \rightarrow \rightarrow \mathsf{CNAME}; \mathsf{SNAME} \rightarrow \rightarrow \mathsf{CNAME}$

## **1.6.6 JOIN DEPENDENCIES AND 5NF / PJNF**

The fifth n ormal form de als with join-dependencies, which is a generalisation of the MVD. The aim of fifth normal form is to have relations that cannot be decomposed further. A relation in 5NF cannot be constructed from several smaller relations.

A relation R satisfies join dependency \*(R1, R2, ..., Rn) if and only if R is equal to the join of R1, R2, ..., Rn where Ri are subsets of the set of attributes of R.

A relation R is in 5NF if for all join dependencies at least one of the following holds:

- a) (R1, R2, ..., Rn) is a trivial join-dependency.
- b) Every Ri is a candidate key for R.

An example of 5 NF c an be provided by the r elation employeet hat de als with emp\_name, Projects and Programming languages.

emp_name	projects	languages
VIRAL	Proj_A	С
AMIT	Proj_A	Java
VIRAL	Proj_B	С
AMIT	Proj_B	C++

The relation above assumes that any employee can work on any project and knows any of the three I anguages. The relation also s ays that any employee c an work on projects Proj\_A, Proj\_B, Proj\_C and may be using a different programming languages in t heir projects. N o em ployee t akes al I t he projects and no pr oject us es al I the programming languages and t herefore a II t hree fields are n eeded t o represent t he information. Thus, all the three attributes are independent of each other.

The relation above does not have any FDs and MVDs since the attributes emp\_name, project and languages are independent; they are related to each other

only by the pairings that have significant information in them. For example, VIRAL is working on Project A using C languague. Thus, the key to the relation is (emp\_name, projects, I anguages). T he r elation is in 4 NF, b ut s till s uffers f rom t he i nsertion, deletion, and update anomalies. However, the relation therefore cannot be decomposed in two relations.

(emp\_name, project) and (emp\_name, language)

The decomposition mentioned above will create tables as given below: emp\_project

emp_name	Projects
VIRAL	Proj_A
AMIT	Proj_A
VIRAL	Proj_B
AMIT	Proj_B

emp\_language

emp_name	Languages	
VIRAL	С	
AMIT	Java	
AMIT	C++	

On taking join of these relations on emp\_name it will produce the following result:

emp_name	projects	languages
VIRAL	Proj_A	С
AMIT	Proj_A	Java
AMIT	Proj_A	C++
VIRAL	Proj_B	С

AMIT	Proj_B	Java
AMIT	Proj_B	C++

Since the joined table does not match the actual table, we can say that it is a lossy decomposition. Thus, t he ex pected j oin de pendency e xpression; \* ((emp\_name, project), (emp\_name, l anguage)) do es not s atisfy t he c onditions o fl ossless decomposition. H ence, the dec omposed tables are losing some important information.

## **1.6.7 PROJECT-JOIN NORMAL FORM**

PJNFis defined us ing t he c oncept of the join dependencies. A r elation s chema R having a set F of functional, multivalued, and join dependencies, is in PJNF (5 NF), if for all the join dependencies in the closure of F (referred to as F+) that are of the form \*( $R1, R2, \ldots, Rn$ ), where each  $Ri \subseteq R$  and  $R = R1 \cup R2 \cup \ldots \cup Rn$ , at least one of the following holds:

- \*(*R*1, *R*2, . . .,*Rn*) is a trivial join dependency.
- Every *Ri*s a superkey for *R*.

PJNF is all so r eferred to as the F ifth Normal F orm (5NF). L et us f irst define the concept of PJNF from the viewpoint of the decomposition and then refine it later to a standard form.

**Definition 1:** A JD \* [R1, R2, ..., R n] over a relation R is trivial if it is satisfied by every relation r (R). The trivial JDs over R are JDs of the form \* [R1, R2, ..., Rn] where for some i the Ri = R.

**Definition 2:** A JD \*[R1, R2, . . . , Rn] ap plies to a r elation s cheme R if R = R1 R2 ...Rn.

**Definition 3:** Let R be a relation scheme having F as the set of FDs and JDs over R. R will be in project-join normal form (PJNF) if for every JD \*[R1, R2, . . ., Rn] which can be derived by F that applies to R, the following holds:

- The JD is trivial, or
- Every Ri is a super key for R.

For a d atabase s cheme t o b e i n project-join n ormal f orm, e very r elation R in t his database s cheme s hould b e i n project-join nor mal f orm w ith r espect t o F. Th e definition of *PJNF* as given abo ve i s a w eaker t han t he or iginal definition of *PJNF* given b y F agin. T he or iginal d efinition e nsures enf orceability of d ependencies by satisfying keys, in addition to elimination of redundancy.

**Definition 4:** Let *R* be a relation scheme having *F* as the set of *FDs* and *JDs* over *R*. *R* will be in project-join normal form (*PJNF*) if for every JD \*[*R*1, *R*2, . . ., *Rn*] which can be derived by *F* that applies to *R*, is implied by the key *FDs* of *R*.

The	following	example	demonstrates	this	definition
	ronowing	елаттріе	uennonstrates	u 115	

**Example**: Consider a relation scheme R = A B C having the set of dependencies as  $F = \{A \rightarrow B C, C \rightarrow A B, *[A B, B C]\}$ . Please note that the R is not in *PJNF*, although since A B and B C are the super keys of R, R satisfies the earlier definition of *PJNF*. But R does not satisfy the revised definition as given above.

Please note t hat s ince every multivalued de pendency is a lso a join d ependency, every PJNF s chema is also in 4NF. D ecomposing a r elation s cheme us ing the JDs that c ause PJNF violations c reates t he PJNF s cheme. PJNF m ay al so be not dependency preserving.

## Check Your Progress

1. Define Fully Functional Dependency.

..... 2. What is Transitivity Rule of Armstrong's Axioms? 3. What do you mean by Lossless Join Decomposition? 4. Define Complete Set of FD? 5. Explain Merits and Demerits of Normalization.

## 1.7LET US SUM UP

In this chapter, we have discussed about dependencies and normalization process of database. We have explored process of functional dependency with all types. We have come to know ab out Inferences R ules of F Ds. We have all so summarized Normalization Process in detail with different Normal Forms. After completion of this chapter student can able to normalize the database into proper forms.

## **1.8CHECK YOUR PROGRESS: POSSIBLE ANSWERS**

- Fully Functional Dependence (FFD) is defined, as Attribute Y is FFD on at tribute X, if it is FD on X and not FD on any proper subset of X. According to FFD definition Y must not be FD .on any proper subset of X.
- 2. Transitivity Axioms is similar to the transitivity rule in algebra. If  $X \rightarrow Y$  holds and  $Y \rightarrow Z$ , then  $X \rightarrow Z$  holds.
- A relation is decomposed into two or more smaller relations, in a w ay by which we c an obt ain t he or iginal r elation b yj oining t he dec omposed p artition o f relation.
- 4. A c omplete s et or c losure s et of F Ds i s a s et of al I pos sible F Ds t hat c an b e derived from a given set of FDs. If F is used to donate the set of FDs for relation R, then a closure of a set of FDs implied by F is denoted by F<sup>+</sup>.
- 5. Merits of Normalization:
  - More efficient data structure.
  - Avoid redundant fields or columns.
  - More flexible data structure.
  - Better understanding of data.
  - Ensures that distinct tables exist when necessary.
  - Easier to maintain data structure.
  - Minimizes data duplication.

## Demerits of Normalization:

- You cannot start building the database before you know what the user needs.
- On N ormalizing the r elations t o h igher n ormal f orms i .e. 4 NF, 5 NF t he performance degrades.
- It is v ery time c onsuming an d d ifficult pr ocess i n n ormalizing r elations of higher degree.
- Careless dec omposition m ay l eads t o bad d esign of d atabase w hich m ay leads to serious problems.

## 1.9 Assignments

1. Explain Armstrong's Axioms of FDs. How can we find Candidate Key using it? Explain with example.

- 2. What is Decomposition? Explain different types of decomposition.
- 3. Describe Multivalued Dependencies and Join Dependencies with proper Example.
- 4. Explain Project Join Normal Form With Example.

## 1.10 Further Reading

1. Database Management S ystems, Raghu R amakrishnan and Johannes G ehrke, McGraw

Hill Publication.

2. Database System Concepts, 6th Edition, Abraham Silberschatz, Henry F. Korth, S. Sudarshan, McGraw Hill.

# Unit 2: Oracle Database 2 Architecture

## **Unit Structure**

- 2.1. Learning Objectives & Outcomes
- 2.2. Introduction
- 2.3. **Database Structures**
- 2.4. Oracle Memory Structures
- 2.5. Process Structure
- 2.6. Storage Structure
- Schema and Schema Objects 2.7.
- Let Us Sum Up 2.8.
- 2.9. Check your progress: Possible Answers
- 2.10. Assignments
- 2.11. Further Reading

## 2.1 LEARNING OBJECTIVES & OUTCOMES

The objective of this chapter is to make the students,

- To learn and understand Oracle Server and Instance Architecture
- To understand the Oracle Processes
- To understand the memory structure of oracle database.
- To learn different storage structures.
- To learn schema and schema objects.

## Outcome:

At the end of this unit,

- Students will be completely aware with Architecture of Oracle Database in detail.
- Students will come to know the background process and its role.
- Students will be able to simplify the different storage structures available in oracle.
- Students will be able to simplify the different schema objects available in oracle.

## 2.2 INTRODUCTION

Oracle S erver i s a database m anagement s ystem t hat pr ovides and op en, comprehensive and integrated a pproach to information m anagement. In ge neral, an Oracle server must reliably manage a large amount of data in multi user environment so t hat m any users c an c oncurrently ac cess t he s ame da ta. All t his m ust be accomplished while delivering high performance. An Oracle Server must also prevent unauthorized ac cess and pr ovide ef ficient s olution f or f ailure r ecovery. T he architecture i ncludes physical c omponents, m emory c omponents, processes, and logical structures.



Figure 6.1: Complete Oracle Architecture

- A. Oracle Server: An O racle s erver i ncludes an O racle Instance a nd a n O racle database. You'll notice that the database includes several different types of files: data files, control files, redo log files and archive redo log files. The Oracle server also ac cess par ameter files and password files. T his s et o f files has s everal purposes as follows:
  - One is to enable system users to process SQL statements.
  - Another is to improve system performance.
  - Still another i s t o ensure t he d atabase c an b e r ecovered if t here i s a software/hardware failure.
- B. Oracle Instance: An O racle Instance c onsists of t wo di fferent s ets of components. The first c omponent s et is the s et of bac kground processes likes SMON, P MON, D BW0/DBWR, R ECO, LG WR, C KPT, D 000 and ot hers et c. Basically e ach bac kground process is a computer program. These processes perform input/output and monitor other Oracle processes to provide good performance and database reliability.

The s econd c omponent s et includes t he m emory s tructures t hat c omprise t he Oracle i nstance. W hen a n instance s tarts up, a m emory s tructure c alled t he System Global Area (SGA) is al located. At this point t he b ackground processes also s tart. T he O racle Instance provides ac cess t o an O racle dat abase. An Oracle Instance opens one and only one database.

**C. Oracle Database:** An O racle dat abase c onsists of f ile s ometimes t hese ar e referred t o as op erating s ystem f iles, b ut t hey are ac tually da tabase f iles t hat store t he d atabase i nformation that a firm or organization ne eds i n or der t o operate.

When a us er connects to an O racle s erver, this is termed a session. The session starts when the O racle s erver validates the user for connection. The session ends when the us er logs out (disconnects) or if the connection t erminates a bnormally (network failure or client computer failure). A user can typically have more than one concurrent s ession. The limit of concurrent s ession connections is controlled by the DBA. This connection e nables us ers to execute S QL s tatements. A on e-to-one correspondence bet ween the U ser and S erver P rocesses is c alled a D edicated Server connection. An a Iternative c onfiguration is to use a S hared S erver w here more than one User Process shares a Server Process.

## 2.3 DATABASE STRUCTURES

Each r unning O racle d atabase is as sociated with a n O racle Instance. When a database is started on a database server, the Oracle allocated a shred memory area called the System Global Area (SGA) and starts several Background processes. This combination of SGA and Oracle Processes is called an Oracle Instance.



Figure 6.2: Basic Structure of Database

After S tarting an instance, the O racle associates the instance with a specific database. This is called mounting the database. The database is then ready to be opened, which makes it ac cessible to au thorized us ers. Multiple instances c an execute c oncurrently on the same c omputer, each ac cessing its own physical database.

## 2.4 ORACLE MEMORY STRUCTURES

The basic m emory s tructures as sociated w ith an O racle Instance include the following:

- System Global Area (SGA): Shared by a llt hes erver and bac kground processes.
- **Program Global Area (PGA):** Private t o each server and bac kground processes. There is one PGA for each process.



Figure 6.3: Memory Structure

## 2.4.1 SYSTEM GLOBAL AREA (SGA)

The S ystem G lobal Area (SGA) is a m emory area t hat c ontains dat a a nd c ontrol information for t he instance. T his information includes both or ganizational data and control information used by the Oracle Server. The size of the SGA is established by the parameter SGA\_MAX\_SIZE in the parameter file. The SGA is allocated when an Oracle instance is started up based on values specified in the initialization parameter file.

The SGA has the following mandatory memory structures:

- Shared Pool (Includes two Components)
  - Library Catch
  - Data Dictionary Cache
- Database Buffer Cache
- ➢ Redo Log Buffer
- > Other structures (for example, lock and latch management, statistical data)

Additional optional memory structures in the SGA include:

- Large Pool
- Java Pool

#### Streams Pool

Earlier v ersions of t he O racle S erver us ed a S tatic S GA. T his m eant t hat if modifications t o m emory m anagement w ere r equired, the database h ad t o be shutdown, m odifications w ere m ade t o the init.ora parameter f ile, a nd t hen the database had t o be r estarted. A fter or acle 9i its us e a D ynamic S GA. Memory configurations f or t he s ystem gl obal ar ea c an be m ade w ithout s hutting down the database instance.

Several initialization parameters are set t hat affect the amount of r andom access memory dedicated to the SGA of an Oracle Instance as follows:

- SGA\_MAX\_SIZE: This sets a limit on the amount of virtual memory allocated to the S GA – a t ypical s etting m ight be 1GB; how ever, if t he value f or SGA\_MAX\_SIZE in the initialization parameter file or server parameter file is less than t he s um t he m emory al located f or al I c omponents, ei ther explicitly in t he parameter f ile or b y def ault, at t he t ime t he i nstance i s i nitialized, t hen t he database ignores the setting for SGA\_MAX\_SIZE.
- DB\_CACHE\_SIZE: This is the size of the D atabase B uffer C ache in standard database blocks. Block sizes vary among operating systems. We use 8KB block sizes. T he total blocks in the c ache d efaults to 48 MB on L INUX/UNIX and 52 MB on Windows operating systems.
- LOG\_BUFFER: This is the number of bytes allocated for the Redo Log Buffer.
- SHARED\_POOL\_SIZE: This is the num ber of bytes of memory allocated to shared SQL and PL/SQL. The default is 16 MB. If the operating system is based on a 64 bit configuration, then the default size is 64 MB.
- LARGE\_POOL\_SIZE: Since this is an o ptional memory o bject, the size of the Large Pool defaults to zero. If the init.ora parameter PARALLEL\_AUTOMATIC\_TUNING is set to TRUE, then the default size is automatically calculated.

• JAVA\_POOL\_SIZE: This is another optional memory object. The default is 24 MB of memory.

The s ize of t he S GA c annot ex ceed t he p arameter S GA\_MAX\_SIZE m inus t he combination of t he s ize of t he add itional par ameters, D B\_CACHE\_SIZE, LOG\_BUFFER, S HARED\_POOL\_SIZE, L ARGE\_POOL\_SIZE, and JAVA\_POOL\_SIZE.

## A. Shared Pool

The Shared Pool is a memory structure that is shared by all system users. It consists of bot h fixed and variable s tructures. T he v ariable c omponent grows and s hrinks depending on the demands placed on memory size by system users and application programs. It Includes Library Cache and Data Dictionary Cache.

Memory is allocated to the Shared Pool by the par ameter SHARED\_POOL\_SIZE in the parameter file. You can alter the size of the shared pool dynamically with the ALTER SYSTEM SET command. You must keep in mind that the total memory allocated to the SGA is set by the SGA\_MAX\_SIZE parameter and since the Shared Pool is part of the SGA, you cannot exceed the maximum size of the SGA.

The S hared P ool s tores the most recently e xecuted SQL s tatements and us ed d ata definitions. This is because some system users and application programs will tend to execute the same SQL statements often.

#### I. Library Cache

Memory is allocated to the Library Cache whenever an SQL statement is parsed or a program u nit is c alled. T his e nables s torage of the most recently used SQL and PL/SQL statements. If the Library Cache is too small, the Library Cache must purge statement definitions in order to have space to load new SQL and PL/SQL

statements. Actual m anagement of t his m emory s tructure is t hrough a Least-Recently-Used (LRU) algorithm. T his m eans that the SQL and P L/SQL s tatements that ar e ol dest and least r ecently used ar e purged w hen m ore s torage s pace i s needed.

The Library Cache is composed of two memory subcomponents:

- Shared SQL: This stores/shares the execution plan and parse tree for SQL statements. If a s ystem user e xecutes a n i dentical s tatement, t hen the statement does not have to be parsed again in order to execute the statement.
- Shared PL/SQL: Procedures an d P ackages: T his s tores/shares t he m ost recently used PL/SQL statements such as functions, packages, and triggers.

#### II. Data Dictionary Cache

The D ata D ictionary C ache i s a m emory s tructure t hat c aches dat a di ctionary information that has been recently used. This includes user account information, data file names, table descriptions, user privileges, and other information.

The da tabase s erver m anages the size of the D ata D ictionary C ache internally and the size depends on the size of the Shared Pool in which the Data Dictionary Cache resides. If the size is too s mall, then the data d ictionary tables that reside on disk must be queried often for information and this will slow down performance.

## B. Database Buffer Cache

The Database Buffer Cache is a fairly large memory object that stores the actual data blocks that are retrieved from data files by system queries and other data manipulation language commands. A query causes a Server Process to first look in the D atabase Buffer C ache t o de termine if t he r equested i nformation ha ppens t o already be I ocated i n m emory – thus the information w ould not ne ed to be r etrieved from di sk an d t his w ould s peed u p performance. If the information is n ot i n the Database Buffer Cache, the Server Process retrieves the information from disk and stores it to the cache.

Keep in mind that information read from disk is read a block at a time, not a row at a time, because a d atabase block is the smallest ad dressable s torage s pace on disk. Database blocks are kept in the D atabase B uffer C ache ac cording t o a Least Recently Used (LRU) algorithm and are aged out of memory if a buffer cache block is not used in order to provide space for the insertion of newly needed database blocks.

The buffers in the cache are organized in two lists:

- Write List: The write list holds dirty buffers these are buffers that hold that data that has been modified, but the blocks have not been written back to disk.
- Least Recently Used (LRU) List: The LR UI ist ho lds free buf fers, pi nned buffers, and dirty buffers that have not yet been moved to the write list. Free buffers do not c ontain a ny us eful d ata a nd ar e available f or us e. P inned buffers are currently being accessed.

When an Oracle process accesses a buffer, the process moves the buffer to the most recently used (MRU) end of the LRU list – this causes dirty buffers to age toward the LRU end of the LRU list.

When an O racle us er process needs a dat a row, it s earches for the data in the database buffer cache because memory can be searched more quickly than hard disk can be ac cessed. If the data row is already in the cache (a cache hit), the process reads the data from memory; otherwise a cache miss occurs and data must be read from hard disk into the database buffer cache.

Before reading a dat a b lock into the c ache, the process m ust first find a f ree buffer. The process s earches the LRU list, s tarting at the LRU end of the list. T he s earch continues until a free buffer is found or until the search reaches the threshold limit of buffers.

Each time the user process finds a dirty buffer as it searches the LRU, that buffer is moved to the write list and the search for a free buffer continues. When the process finds a free buffer, it reads the data block from disk into the buffer and moves the buffer to the MRU end of the LRU list.

If an Oracle user process searches the threshold limit of buffers without finding a free buffer, the process s tops s earching the LR U list and s ignals the DBW0 bac kground process to write some of the dirty buffers to disk. This frees up some buffers.

The block size for a database is set when a database is created and is determined by the i nit.ora p arameter file parameter nam ed D B\_BLOCK\_SIZE. Typical b lock s izes are 2K, 4K, 8K, 1 6K, and 3 2K. T he s ize of blocks in the D atabase B uffer C ache matches the block size for the database.

## C. Redo Log Buffer

The Redo Log Buffer memory object stores images of all changes made to database blocks. As you know, database blocks typically store several table rows of organizational data. This means that if a single column value from one row in a block is c hanged, t he i mage is s tored. C hanges i nclude INSERT, UPDATE, D ELETE, CREATE, ALTER, or DROP.

Think of the Redo Log Buffer as a circular buffer that is reused over and over. As the buffer fills up, copies of the images are stored to the Redo Log Files that are covered in more detail in a later module.

#### D. Large Pool

The L arge Pool is a no ptional memory structure that primarily relieves the memory burden placed on the Shared Pool. The Large Pool size is set with the LARGE\_POOL\_SIZE parameter – this is not a dy namic parameter. It does not us e an LRU list to manage memory.

#### E. Java Pool

The Java P ool is a n o ptional m emory object, b ut is required if the d atabase h as Oracle J ava i nstalled and in us e for O racle JVM. T hes ize is set with the JAVA\_POOL\_SIZE parameter t hat defaults t o 2 4MB. The J ava P ool is us ed f or memory allocation to parse Java commands. Storing Java code and data in the Java Pool is analogous to SQL and PL/SQL code cached in the Shared Pool.

## F. Streams Pool

It is s ized with the p arameter S TREAMS\_POOL\_SIZE. This p ool s tores da ta and control structures to support the Oracle Streams. Oracle Steams manages sharing of data and events in a distributed environment.

## 2.4.2 PROGRAM GLOBAL AREA (PGA)

The Program Global Area (PGA) is a lso termed the Process Global Area (PGA) and is a part of memory allocated that is outside of the Oracle Instance. The PGA stores dat a and c ontrol i nformation f or a s ingle S erver P rocess or a single Background Process. It is allocated when a process is created and the memory is scavenged by the operating system when the process terminates. This is NOT a shared part of memory – one PGA to each process only.

The content of the PGA varies, but generally includes the following:

- Private SQL Area: Data for binding variables and runtime memory allocations. A us er s ession issuing SQL s tatements has a P rivate SQL Area that m ay be associated w ith a S hared SQL Area if the s ame SQL s tatement is be ing executed b y m ore t han o ne s ystem us er. T his o ften ha ppens i n O LTP environments where many users are executing and using the same application program.
  - **Dedicated Server environment:** the P rivate S QL Area is located in the Program Global Area.
  - Shared Server environment: the P rivate S QL Area is located in the System Global Area.
- Session Memory: Memory t hat ho lds s ession v ariables and ot her s ession information.
- Software Code Area: Software c ode ar eas s tore O racle executable f iles running as part of t he O racle instance. T hese c ode ar eas are s tatic in n ature and are located in pr ivileged m emory t hat i s s eparate from ot her user programs. The code can be installed sharable when multiple Oracle instances execute on the same server with the same software release level.

## 2.5 PROCESS STRUCTURE

When you invoke an application program or a n O racle tool, such as E nterprise Manager, the O racle s erver c reates a s erver process to execute the c ommands issued by the application. The O racle s erver a lso c reates a s et of bac kground processes for an instance hat interact with each other a nd with the op erating system to manage the memory structures asynchronously perform I/O to write data to disk, and perform other required tasks. Which background processes a represent depends on the features that are being used in the database.



Figure 6.4: Process Structure

Process Structure includes mainly three processes as follows:

- User Process: When a database user requests a connection to the Oracle Server it's started.
- Server Process: When user established a session and connects with oracle instance it will be started.
- Background Process: When O racle Instance is s tated t hen bac kground process will started.

#### A. User Process

In or der t o us e O racle, you must ob viously connect to the database. This must occur whether you're using SQL\*Plus, an Oracle tool such as Designer or Forms, or an application program.

This gen erates a U ser P rocess t hat ge nerates programmatic c alls t hrough y our user i nterface t hat c reates a s ession and c auses t he gen eration of a S erver Process that is either dedicated or shared.

#### **B. Server Process**

The Server Process is the go-between for a User Process and the Oracle Instance. In a Dedicated Server environment, there is a single Server Process to serve each User P rocess. I n a S hared S erver e nvironment, a S erver P rocess c an s erve several User Processes, although with some performance reduction.

#### C. Background Processes

As is shown here, there are both mandatory and optional background processes that are started whenever a nO racle Instance starts up. These background processes serve all system users. We will cover mandatory process in detail.

## Mandatory background processes:

- DBWn PMON CKPT
- LGWR SMON

## **Optional background processes:**

- ARCn LMDn RECO
- CJQ0 LMON Snnn
- Dnnn Pnnn
- LCKn QMNn

Figure 6.5: Oracle Background Process

a. Database Writer (DBWn / DBWR): The D atabase W riter w rites m odified blocks from the database buffer cache to the datafiles. Although one database writer process (DBW0) is sufficient for most systems, you can configure up to 20 DBWn processes (DBW0 through DBW9 and DBWa through DBWj) in order to i mprove w rite per formance f or a s ystem t hat m odifies dat a h eavily. T he initialization par ameter D B\_WRITER\_PROCESSES s pecifies t he n umber of DBWn processes.

The purpose of DBWn is to improve system performance by caching writes of database blocks from the Database Buffer Cache back to datafiles. Blocks that have been modified and that need to be written back to disk are termed "dirty blocks." T he D BWn al so ensures that there are en ough free buf fers in the Database Buffer Cache to service Server Processes that may be reading data from datafiles into the Database Buffer Cache. Performance improves because by delaying writing changed d atabase blocks back to disk, a S erver Process m ay find the data that is n eeded to m eet a User Process r equest already residing in memory.

b. Log Writer (LGWR): The Log Writer (LGWR) writes contents from the Redo Log B uffer to the Redo Log File that is in use. These are sequential writes since the Redo Log Files record d atabase modifications based on the actual time that the modification takes place. LGWR actually writes before the DBWn writes and on ly confirms that a COMMIT op eration has succeeded when the Redo Log Buffer contents are successfully written to disk. LGWR can also call the DBWn to write contents of the Database Buffer Cache to disk.

c. System Monitor (SMON): The S ystem Monitor (SMON) is r esponsible f or instance r ecovery by ap plying e ntries in t he o nline r edo I og f iles t o t he datafiles.

If an Oracle Instance fails, all information in memory not written to disk is lost. SMON is responsible for recovering the instance when the database is started up again. It does the following:

- Rolls forward to recover data that was recorded in a Redo Log File, but that had not yet be en recorded to a dat afile by DBWn. S MON reads the Redo Log F iles a nd a pplies the c hanges to the data b locks. T his recovers al I transactions that were committed because these were written to the Redo Log Files prior to system failure.
- Opens the database to allow system users to logon.
- Rolls back uncommitted transactions.

SMON al so do es l imited s pace m anagement. It c ombines ad jacent ar eas of free s pace in t he d atabase's dat afiles f or t ablespaces t hat ar e d ictionary managed. It also de-allocates temporary segments to create free space in the data files.

- d. **Process Monitor (PMON):** The Process Monitor (PMON) is a cleanup type of process that cleans up after failed processes such as the dropping of a user connection due to a network failure or the abend of a user application program.
- e. Checkpoint (CKPT): The Checkpoint (CPT) process writes information to the database control files that i dentifies the point in time with r egard to the R edo Log Files where instance recovery is to begin should it be necessary. This is done at a minimum, once every three seconds.

Think of a c heckpoint record as a s tarting point for recovery. D BWn will have completed writing all buffers from the Database Buffer Cache to disk prior to the checkpoint, thus those record will not require recovery. This does the following:

- Ensures m odified d ata b locks i n m emory ar e r egularly w ritten t o di sk CKPT can call the DBWn process in order to ensure this and does so when writing a checkpoint record.
- Reduces Instance Recovery time by minimizing the amount of work needed for re covery s ince only R edo Lo g F ile ent ries pr ocessed s ince t he last checkpoint require recovery.
- Causes al I c ommitted d ata t o be w ritten t o dat afiles dur ing d atabase shutdown.

If a Redo Log File fills up and a switch is made to a new Redo Log File (this is covered in m ore detail in a later m odule), t he C KPT pr ocess al so w rites checkpoint information into the headers of the datafiles.

Checkpoint i nformation w ritten to c ontrol f iles i ncludes t he s ystem c hange number (the SCN is a number stored in the control file and in the headers of the database files that are used to ensure that all files in the system are synchronized), location of which Redo Log File is to be used for recovery, and other i nformation. C KPT d oes not write dat a blocks or redo blocks to disk – it calls DBWn and LGWR as necessary.

#### **Optional Background Process:**

f. Archiver (ARCn): We cover the Archiver (ARCn) optional background process in more detail because it is almost always used for production systems storing mission critical information. The ARCn process must be used to recover from loss of a physical disk drive for systems that are "busy" with lots of transactions being completed.

When a Redo Log File fills up, Oracle switches to the next Redo Log File. The DBA creates several of these and the details of creating them are covered in a later module. If all Redo Log Files fill up, then Oracle switches back to the first

one and us es them in a round-robin f ashion by overwriting ones that have already be en used – it should be o bvious that the information stored on the files, once overwritten, is lost forever. If ARCn is in what is termed ARCHIVELOG mode, then as the Redo Log Files fill up, they are individually written to Archived Redo Log Files and LGWR does not overwrite a Redo Log File until archiving has completed. Thus, committed data is not lost forever and can be recovered in the event of a disk failure. Only the contents of the SGA will be lost if an Instance fails.

In N OARCHIVELOG m ode, t he R edo Log F iles ar e o verwritten a nd not archived. R ecovery c an only be m ade to the last full bac kup of the da tabase files.

When running in ARCHIVELOG mode, the DBA is responsible to ensure that the Archived Redo Log Files do not consume all available disk space! Usually after two complete b ackups are made, any Archived Redo Log Files for prior backups are deleted.

- g. Coordinator Job Queue (CJQ0): Coordinator J ob Q ueue This is t he coordinator of job queue processes for an instance. It monitors the JOB\$ table (table of j obs in t he j ob q ueue) and s tarts j ob q ueue pr ocesses (Jnnn) as needed to e xecute j obs T he J nnn processes execute j ob r equests c reated by the DBMS\_JOBS package.
- h. Dispatcher Process (Dnnn): Dispatcher number "nnn", for e xample, D 000 would be the first dispatcher process Dispatchers ar e optional b ackground processes, present only when the shared server configuration is used.
- i. Recovery (RECO): The Recovery process is used to resolve distributed transactions that are pending due to a net work or system failure in a distributed database. At timed intervals, the local R ECO at tempts to connect to remote databases and automatically complete the commit or rollback of the local portion of any pending distributed transactions.

## 2.6 STORAGE STRUCTURE

An O racle d atabase c onsists of file s ometimes these are referred to as operating system files, but they are actually database files that store the database information t hat a f irm or or ganization ne eds i n or der t o operate. D atabase Storage Structures divided into two parts as follows:

- Physical Structure
- Logical Structure

## 2.6.1 PHYSICAL DATABASE STRUCTURE

An Oracle database consists of physical files shown as below figure.



Figure 6.6: Physhical Storage Structure

The files that constitute an Oracle Database are organized into the following:

- **A. Control Files:** Contains data about the database itself. These files are critical to dat abase. W ithout i t, c annot ope n dat a f iles t o ac cess dat a w ithin t he database. It is used to synchronize all database activities.
- B. Data Files: Contain the actual data for the database.
- **C. Redo Log Files:** Contain a record of changes made to the database, and allow recovery when a d atabase failure oc curs. If the database crashes and does not lose any data files, then the instance can recover the database with the information in these files.

Other key files as noted above include:

- Parameter file: It used to define how the instance is configured when its start up. There are two types of parameter files.
  - The init.ora file (also called the PFILE): is a s tatic parameter file. It contains parameters that specify how the database instance is to start up. For example, some parameters will specify how to allocate memory to the various parts of the system global area.
  - **The spfile.ora**: is a dynamic parameter file. It also stores parameters to specify h ow t o s tartup a da tabase; how ever, i ts p arameters c an be modified while the database is running.
- Password file: Specifies which special users are authenticated to startup/shut down a n O racle Instance. Also a llows us er t o c onnect r emotely t o t he database.
- Archived redo log files: Contain a n ong oing hi story of t he dat a c hange generated by instance. We can say that, it is copy of the redo log files and are necessary for recovery in an online, transaction-processing environment in the event of a disk failure.
- Backup files: Are used for database recovery. Typically restore a backup files when a media failure or user error has damaged or deleted the original file.
- Trace Files: Each server and background process can write to an associated trace file. When an internal error is detected by a process, the process dumps information a bout the error to its trace file. Some of the information written to trace file is intended for the database administrator.
- Alert Log Files: There are special trace files. They are also known as al ert logs. The alert log of a database is a chronological log of messages and errors.

## 2.6.2 LOGICAL STRUCTURE

It is helpful to understand how an Oracle database is organized in terms of a logical structure that is used to organize physical objects.




Figure 6.7: Logical Storage Structure

Tablespace: An O racle 10 g dat abase m ust al ways c onsist of at I east t wo tablespaces (SYSTEM an d SYSAUX), al though a t ypical O racle dat abase w ill multiple tablespaces tablespaces. A tablespace is a logical storage facility (a logical c ontainer) f or s toring ob jects s uch as t ables, i ndexes, s equences, clusters, and other database objects.

Each t ablespace has at I east one physical datafile t hat actually s tores t he tablespace at the operating system level. A large tablespace may have more than o ne da tafile a llocated for s toring o bjects as signed t o t hat t ablespace. A tablespace be longs to o nly on e da tabase. T ablespace c an be brought online and t aken offline f or pur poses of bac kup and m anagement, ex cept f or t he SYSTEM tablespace that must always be online. Tablespaces can be in either read-only or read-write status.

- Datafile: Tablespaces are stored in da tafiles which are physical disk objects. A datafile can only store objects for a single tablespace, but a tablespace may have m ore than on e dat afile – this hap pens when a d isk drive d evice fills up and a t ablespace ne eds to be ex panded, then it is expanded to a new disk drive. The DBA c an change the size of a dat afile to make it smaller or later. The file can also grow in size dynamically as the tablespace grows.
- Segment: When I ogical s torage ob jects ar e c reated w ithin a t ablespace, for example, an employee table, a segment is allocated to the object. Obviously a

tablespace typically has many segments. A segment cannot span tablespaces but can span datafiles that belong to a single tablespace.

- Extent: Each object has one segment which is a physical collection of extents. Extents ar e s imply c ollections of c ontiguous di sk s torage b locks. A l ogical storage object such as a table or index always consists of at least one extent – ideally the initial extent al located to a n object will be large enou gh to s tore all data that is initially l oaded. As a t able or index grows, ad ditional extents ar e added to the s egment. A DBA c an add e xtents to s egments in or der t o tune performance of the system. An extent cannot span a datafile.
- Data Block: The Oracle Server manages data at the smallest unit in what is termed a block or data block. Data are actually stored in blocks.



#### Figure 6.8: Structure of Data Block

A ph ysical bl ock i s t he s mallest ad dressable I ocation on a disk dr ive f or read/write operations. An O racle da ta b lock c onsists of on e or m ore physical blocks (operating system blocks) so the data block, if larger than an operating system block, s hould b e an e ven m ultiple of t he oper ating s ystem block s ize, e.g., if the UNIX operating system block size is 2K or 4K, then the Oracle data block should be 2K, 4K, 8K, 12K, 16K, etc in size. This optimizes I/O.

The data block size is set at the time the database is created and cannot be changed. It is set with the DB\_BLOCK\_SIZE parameter. The maximum data block size depends on the operating system.

## 2.7 SCHEMA AND SCHEMA OBJECTS

A schema is a c ollection of da tabase objects. A schema is owned by a dat abase us er and has the same name as that user. A schema is a collection of schema objects.

Schema objects are logical data storage structures. Schema objects do not have a oneto-one correspondence to physical files on disk that store their information. However, Oracle stores a schema object logically within a tablespace of the database. The data of each obj ect is phy sically contained in o ne or more of the tablespace's dat afiles. For some objects s uch as tables, indexes, and clusters, y ou can specify how much disk space Oracle allocates for the object within the tablespace's datafiles.

Different types of objects contained in a user's schema. It includes:

- **Tables:** Tables are the basic unit of d ata s torage in an O racle database. D ata is stored in rows and columns.
- Views: A view is a tailored presentation of the data contained in one or more tables.
   A view takes the output of a query and treats it as a table; therefore, also known as virtual table.
- **Synonyms:**As ynonym is an alias f or a ny t able, view, s napshot, s equence, procedure, function, or package. Because a synonym is simply an alias, it requires no storage.
- **Indexes:**Indexes ar e opt ional s tructures as sociated with t ables and c lusters. It is used to speed SQL statement execution on a table.
- **Clusters:** A cluster is a group of tables that share the same dat a blocks because they share common columns and are often used together.
- Hash Clusters: A hash cluster stores related rows together in the same data blocks. Rows in a hash cluster are stored together based on their hash value.

#### > Check Your Progress

1. List Components of Oracle Instance?

.....

2. Which Parameter is used to define size of SGA? Maximum size of SGA Is?

3. Which Background Process is Responsible for Instance Recovery?
4. Explain Archived Redo Log File?
5. Is there more than One Data files in a single Tablespace?

## 2.8 LET US SUM UP

In this chapter, we have discussed about oracle architecture and instance. We have also ex plored m emory s tructure of O racle D atabase. We have c ome to k now v ital processes, which is executes during database execution. We have also summarized storage s tructures a nd s upported f iles and ar chitectures. After c ompletion of t his chapter we came to know about schemas and various schema objects.

## 2.9 CHECK YOUR PROGRESS: POSSIBLE ANSWERS

- 1. Oracle Instance c onsists of T wo c omponents n amely Memory S tructure and Background Processes.
- SGA\_MAX\_SIZE parameter of Initialization Parameter file is used to define size of S GA. The s ize of t he S GA c annot e xceed t he par ameter S GA\_MAX\_SIZE minus t he c ombination of t he s ize of t he a dditional par ameters, DB\_CACHE\_SIZE, LOG\_BUFFER, SHARED\_POOL\_SIZE, LARGE\_POOL\_SIZE, and JAVA\_POOL\_SIZE.
- 3. System Monitor (SMON) is responsible for instance recovery by applying entries in the online redo log files to the datafiles.
- 4. Archived Redo Log File is the copy of redo log files and necessary for recovery in the event of disk failure.
- 5. Yes, A Large tablespace may have more than one datafiles.

## 2.10 ASSIGNMENTS

- 1. Explain SGA in detail.
- 2. What is Database Buffer Cache? Explain in detail with parameters.
- 3. Describe all Background Processes.
- 4. Explain Logical Database Storage Structures.
- 5. Define Schema and Schema Objects in detail.

## 2.11 FURTHER READING

1. Expert O racle D atabase Architecture, T hird E dition, D arl K uhn & T homas K yte,

#### Apress

Publishing.

2. Oracle Database 10g The Complete Reference, Kevin Loney, Oracle Press.

3. A dvanced R DBMS U sing O racle, H imanshu D abir & D ipali Mehar, Vision Publication.

## Unit 3: Distributed Database 3 Architecture

## **Unit Structure**

- 4.1. Learning Objectives & Outcomes
- 4.2. Introduction
- 4.3. Homogenous Distributed Database Systems
- 4.4. Heterogeneous Distributed Database Systems
- 4.5. Client/Server Database Architecture
- 4.6. Database Links
- 4.7. **Distributed Database Security**
- 4.8. Transaction Processing in a Distributed System
- 4.9. **Distributed Database Application Development**
- 4.10. Let Us Sum Up
- 4.11. Check your progress: Possible Answers
- 4.12. Assignments
- 4.13. Further Reading

## **3.1 LEARNING OBJECTIVES & OUTCOMES**

The objective of this chapter is,

- To learn and understand Different Distributed Database Architectures
- To understand the Client/Server Database Architecture.
- To understand Database Links and Users.
- To learn security aspects into the Distributed Database Environment.
- To learn Distributed Database Application Development

#### Outcome:

At the end of this unit,

• S tudents w ill be c ompletely aw are w ith Homogenous a nd H eterogeneous Distributed Architectures.

• Students will come to know about different types of Database Links and Restrictions of Database Links.

- Students will be able to simplify the Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Mechanism.
- Students will be able to simplify Query Optimization in Distributed Environments.

## **3.2 INTRODUCTION**

A distributed d atabase s ystem allows appl ications t o ac cess dat a f rom I ocal and remote dat abases. In a homogenous distributed dat abase s ystem, each dat abase is an Oracle Database. In a heterogeneous distributed database system, at least one of the databases is not an Oracle Database. Distributed databases use client/server architecture t o pr ocess i nformation r equests. In t his c hapter w ill I earn different concepts as follows:

- Homogenous Distributed Database Systems
- Heterogeneous Distributed Database Systems
- Client/Server Database Architecture
- Database Links

- Database Security Aspects
- Distributed Query Optimization

## **3.3 Homogenous Distributed Database Systems**

A homogenous distributed dat abase s ystem i s a n etwork of t wo or m ore O racle Databases t hat r eside on o ne or m ore s ystems. An a pplication c an s imultaneously access or modify the data in several databases in a single distributed environment.

You can also create synonyms for remote objects in the distributed system so that users can access them with the same syntax as local objects. In this way, a distributed system gives the appearance of native data access. Users on mfg do not have to know that the data they access resides on remote databases.



Figure 7.1: Homogenous Distributed Database Systems

An Oracle Database distributed database system can incorporate Oracle Databases of different v ersions. All s upported r eleases of O racle D atabase c an par ticipate in a distributed d atabase s ystem. N evertheless, t he app lications t hat w ork w ith t he distributed database must understand the functionality that is available at each node in the s ystem. A d istributed d atabase a pplication c annot e xpect an O racle7 da tabase to understand the SQL extensions that are only available with Oracle Database.

#### I. Distributed Databases Vs Distributed Processing

The terms distributed dat abase and distributed processing are closely related, yet have distinct meanings. There definitions are as follows:

- **Distributed database:** A s et o f d atabases i n a di stributed s ystem t hat c an appear to applications as a single data source.
- **Distributed processing:** the operation that occurs when an application distributes i ts t asks am ong di fferent c omputers i n a n etwork. F or ex ample, a database app lication t ypically di stributes front-end pr esentation t asks t o c lient computers and allows a back-end database server to manage shared access to a database. Consequently, a distributed database application processing system is more commonly referred to as a client/server database application system.

Distributed dat abase s ystems em ploy a d istributed processing ar chitecture. F or example, an O racle D atabase s erver ac ts as a c lient when it r equests dat a t hat another Oracle D atabase server manages.

## **3.4 Heterogeneous Distributed Database System**

In a heterogeneous distributed database system, at least one of the databases is a non-Oracle D atabase s ystem. T o t he appl ication, t he h eterogeneous distributed dat abase system appears as a single, local, Oracle Database. The local Oracle Database server hides the distribution and heterogeneity of the data.

The O racle D atabase s erver ac cesses the non-Oracle D atabase s ystem using O racle Heterogeneous S ervices with an agent. If y ou access the non-Oracle D atabase da ta store us ing an O racle T ransparent Gateway, then the a gent is a system-specific application. For example, if y ou include a S ybase dat abase in a n O racle D atabase distributed system, then you must obtain a Sybase-specific transparent gateway so that the Oracle D atabase in the system can communicate with it. Alternatively, y ou c an use generic c onnectivity to ac cess non -Oracle D atabase da ta stores s o l ong as t he n on-Oracle D atabase s ystem s upports t he O DBC or O LE D B protocols.

#### A. Heterogeneous Services

Heterogeneous Services (HS) is an integrated component within the Oracle Database server and the enabling technology for the current suite of Oracle Transparent Gateway products. H S provides the common ar chitecture and administration mechanisms for Oracle Database gateway products and other heterogeneous access facilities. Also, it provides upw ardly compatible functionality for us ers of most of the earlier Oracle Transparent Gateway releases.

#### **B. Transparent Gateway Agents**

For each non-Oracle D atabase system that you access, Heterogeneous S ervices c an use a transparent g ateway a gent to interface with the specified non-Oracle D atabase system. The agent is specific to the non-Oracle D atabase s ystem, s o each type of system requires a different agent.

The t ransparent g ateway ag ent f acilitates c ommunication bet ween O racle D atabase and non-Oracle Database systems and uses the Heterogeneous Services component in the Oracle Database server. The agent executes SQL and transactional requests at the non-Oracle Database system on behalf of the Oracle Database server.

#### C. Generic Connectivity

Generic connectivity en ables you to connect to non-Oracle D atabase dat a stores by using either a Heterogeneous Services ODBC agent or a Heterogeneous Services OLE DB agent. Both are included with your Oracle product as a standard feature. Any data source c ompatible w ith the O DBC or O LE DB standards c an be ac cessed us ing a generic connectivity agent.

The a dvantage to generic c onnectivity is t hat it m ay n ot be r equired for you to purchase and configure a separate system-specific agent. You use an ODBC or OLE DB driver that can interface with the agent. However, some data access features are only available with transparent gateway agents.

## 3.5 CLIENT/SERVER DATABASE ARCHITECTURE

A database s erver is the O racle s oftware m anaging a database, and a c lient is an application t hat r equests information from a s erver. Each c omputer in a network is a node that can host one or more databases. Each node in a distributed database system can act as a client, a server, or both, depending on the situation.

In Figure 7 -2, t he hos t f or the hq database is ac ting as a dat abase s erver w hen a statement is issued against its local da ta (for example, the second statement in each transaction issues a s tatement against the local dept table), but is ac ting as a c lient when it issues a statement against remote data (for example, the first statement in each transaction is issued against the remote table emp in the sales database).



Figure 7.2: An Oracle Database Distributed Database System

A c lient c an c onnect directly or indirectly to a d atabase s erver. A d irect c onnection occurs when a c lient connects to a server and accesses information from a dat abase contained on that server.

## 3.6 DATABASE LINKS

The central concept in distributed database systems is a database link. A database link is a c onnection b etween two p hysical database s ervers that allows a c lient to ac cess them as one logical database.

A database link is a pointer that defines a one-way communication path from an Oracle Database server to another database server. The link pointer is actually defined as an entry in a data dictionary table. To access the link, you must be connected to the local database that contains the data dictionary entry.

A d atabase I ink c onnection is one-way in the sense that a c lient c onnected to I ocal database A c an us e a link s tored in database A t o ac cess information in r emote database B, but us ers c onnected to dat abase B c annot us e t he s ame link to access data in database A. If I ocal users on dat abase B w ant to access data on dat abase A, then they must define a link that is stored in the data dictionary of database B.

A database link connection allows local users to access data on a remote database. For this c onnection t o oc cur, e ach dat abase i n t he distributed s ystem m ust hav e a unique global d atabase nam e in t he ne twork d omain. T he g lobal d atabase nam e uniquely identifies a database server in a distributed system.

Database links are either private or public. If they are private, then only the user who created the link has access; if they are public, then all database users have access. One principal difference among database links is the way that connections to a remote database occur. Users access a remote database through the following types of links:

Description

Type of Link	Description
Connected user link	Users c onnect as t hemselves, w hich m eans t hat t hey m ust have an account on the remote database with the same user name and password as their account on the local database.
Fixed user link	Users connect using the user name and password referenced in the link.
Current user link	A us er connects as a gl obal us er. A local us er c an connect as a global user in the context of a stored procedure, without storing the global user's password in a link definition.

Create dat abase I inks us ing the CREATE D ATABASE L INK statement. After a I ink is created, you can use it to specify schema objects in SQL statements.

## **3.6.1 SHARED DATABASE LINKS**

As hared d atabase link is a link b etween a locals erver process and the remote database. The link is shared because multiple client processes can use the same link simultaneously.

When a l ocal da tabase is c onnected t o a r emote dat abase t hrough a d atabase l ink, either dat abase c an r un i n d edicated or s hared s erver m ode. T he f ollowing t able illustrates the possibilities:

Local Database Mode	Remote Database Mode
Dedicated	Dedicated
Dedicated	Shared server
Shared server	Dedicated
Shared server	Shared server

A shared database link can exist in any of these four configurations. Shared links differ from standard database links in the following ways:

- Different us ers ac cessing the same schema object through a dat abase link can share a network connection.
- When a us er m ust establish a c onnection t o a remote s erver from a particular server pr ocess, t he pr ocess c an r euse c onnections al ready established t o t he remote s erver. The r euse of t he c onnection c an oc cur if t he c onnection w as established on the same server process with the same database link, possibly in a different s ession. I n a non -shared da tabase link, a c onnection i s not s hared across multiple sessions.
- When you use a shared database link in a shared server configuration, a network connection is established directly out of the shared server process in the local server. For a non-shared database link on a local shared server, this connection would have be en established through the local dispatcher, r equiring c ontext switches for the local dispatcher, and requiring data to go through the dispatcher.

The great advantage of database links is that they allow users to access another user's objects in a remote database so that they are bounded by the privilege set of the object owner. In other words, a l ocal us er c an ac cess a l ink to a remote d atabase w ithout having to be a user on the remote database.

## 3.6.2. TYPES OF DATABASE LINKS

Oracle Database lets you create private, public, and global database links. These basic link types differ according to which users are allowed access to the remote database:

Туре	Owner	Description
Private	User w ho c reated t he l ink. View	Creates I ink i n a s pecific s chema of t he
	ownership data through:	local database. Only the owner of a private
	DBA_DB_LINKS	database I ink or P L/SQL s ubprograms i n

Туре	Owner	Description
	ALL_DB_LINKS	the s chema c an us e t his I ink t o ac cess
	USER_DB_LINKS	database objects in the corresponding
		remote database.
Public	User called PUBLIC. View	Creates a database-wide link. All users and
	ownership d ata t hrough v iews	PL/SQL subprograms in the database can
	shown for private database links.	use the link to access database objects in
		the corresponding remote database.
Global	User called PUBLIC. View	Creates a net work-wide I ink. W hen a n
	ownership d ata t hrough v iews	Oracle network uses a directory server, the
	shown for private database links.	directory s erver au tomatically c reate an d
		manages global database links (as net
		service names) for every O racle D atabase
		in the network. Users and PL/SQL
		subprograms i n an y da tabase c an us e  a
		global l inkt o ac cess obj ects i n t he
		corresponding remote database.
		Note: In earlier releases of Oracle
		Database, a gl obal d atabase link r eferred
		to a database I ink t hat was registered with
		an O racle Names s erver. T he us e of a n
		Oracle N ames s erver h as bee n
		deprecated. In this document, global
		database links refer to the use of net
		service names from the directory server.

Determining the type of database links to employ in a distributed database depends on the specific requirements of the applications using the system. Consider these features when making your choice:

Type of Link	Features
Private database link	This link is more secure than a public or global link, because only the owner of the private link, or subprograms within the same schema, can use the link to access the remote database.
Public database link	When m any us ers require an access path to a remote O racle Database, you c an c reate a single public da tabase link for a ll users in a database.
Global database link	When an Oracle network uses a directory server, an administrator c an c onveniently m anage gl obal d atabase l inks for all databases in the system. D atabase link m anagement is centralized and simple.

## 3.6.3. USERS OF DATABASE LINKS

When c reating t he l ink, y ou d etermine w hich users hould c onnect t o t he r emote database to access the data. The following table explains the differences among the categories of users involved in database links:

User Type	Description
Connected user	A local user accessing a database link in which no fixed username an d p assword hav e be en s pecified. If SYSTEM accesses a public link in a query, then the connected user i s SYSTEM, and t he da tabase c onnects t o the SYSTEM schema in the remote database. Note: A c onnected us er do es no t h ave t o b e t he user w ho created the link, but is any user who is accessing the link.
Current user	A global user in a CURRENT_USER database link. The gl obal user m ust be authenticated by an X.509 c ertificate ( an S SL- authenticated enterprise user) or a password (a password-

User Type	Description
	authenticated enterprise user), and be a user on both databases
	involved in the link. Current user links are an aspect of the Oracle
	Advanced Security option.
	See Oracle D atabase Advanced S ecurity Administrator's
	Guide for information about global security
Fixed user	A user whose username/password is part of the link definition. If
	a link includes a fixed us er, the fixed us er's us ername and
	password are used to connect to the remote database.

## **3.6.4. DATABASE LINK RESTRICTIONS**

You cannot perform the following operations using database links:

- > Grant privileges on remote objects
- Execute DESCRIBE operations on s ome r emote ob jects. T he f ollowing r emote objects, however, do support DESCRIBE operations:
  - Tables
  - Views
  - Procedures
  - Functions
- > Analyze remote objects
- > Define or enforce referential integrity
- > Grant roles to users in a remote database
- > Obtain non-default roles on a remote database.
- > Execute hash query joins that use shared server connections

## 3.7 DISTRIBUTED DATABASE SECURITY

The da tabase s upports all of the security features that are available with a nondistributed database environment for distributed database systems, including:

- Password authentication for users and roles
- Some types of e xternal authentication f or us ers and r oles i ncluding K erberos version 5 for connected user links.
- Login packet encryption for client-to-server and server-to-server connections

Some important concepts to consider when configuring an Oracle Database distributed database system:

- Authentication Through Database Links
- <u>Authentication Without Passwords</u>
- Supporting User Accounts and Roles
- Centralized User and Privilege Management
- Database Encryption
- A. Authentication Through Database Links

Database links ar e e ither private or pu blic, authenticated or non-authenticated. Y ou create p ublic links b y s pecifying the PUBLIC keyword in t he link c reation s tatement. You c reate a uthenticated l inks b y s pecifying t he CONNECT TO clause, AUTHENTICATED BY clause, or both clauses together in the database link creation statement. For example, you can issue:

B. Authentication Without Passwords

When using a c onnected user or current user dat abase link, y ou c an us e a n external authentication s ource s uch as K erberos t o o btain end-to-end s ecurity. I n end -to-end authentication, c redentials are p assed from s erver to s erver a nd c an be a uthenticated by a database server belonging to the same domain.

C. Supporting User Accounts and Roles

In a di stributed d atabase s ystem, you must c arefully p lan the us er ac counts and r oles that are necessary to support applications using the system. Note that:

- The us er ac counts necessary to establish server-to-server connections must be available in all databases of the distributed database system.
- The r oles nec essary t o m ake a vailable a pplication pr ivileges t o di stributed database app lication us ers m ust be pr esent i n al l dat abases of t he di stributed database system.

As y ou c reate t he database links f or t he nodes in a d istributed database s ystem, determine w hich us er ac counts a nd r oles eac h s ite m ust s upport s erver-to-server connections that use the links.

In a di stributed en vironment, us ers typically require access to many network s ervices. When y ou m ust c onfigure s eparate a uthentications f or eac h us er t o ac cess eac h network s ervice, s ecurity administration c an bec ome unw ieldy, es pecially f or l arge systems.

D. Centralized User and Privilege Management

The database pr ovides different w ays f or you t o m anage t he us ers and pr ivileges involved in a distributed system. For example, you have these options:

- Enterprise user management: You c an c reate gl obal us ers w ho are authenticated through SSL or by using passwords, then manage these users and their privileges in a directory through an independent enterprise directory service.
- Network authentication service: This c ommon t echnique s implifies s ecurity management f or distributed e nvironments. You c an use t he O racle Advanced Security option t o en hance O racle Net and t he s ecurity of a n O racle D atabase distributed database system. Windows NT native authentication is an example of a non-Oracle authentication solution.
- E. Database Encryption

The Oracle Advanced Security option also enables Oracle Net and related products to use network data encryption and check-summing so that data cannot be read or altered.

It protects data from unauthorized viewing by using the RSA Data Security RC4 or the Data Encryption Standard (DES) encryption algorithm.

To ensure that d ata has not be en modified, d eleted, or replayed during transmission, the security services of the Oracle Advanced Security option can generate a cryptographically secure message digest and include it with each packet sent across the network.

## 3.8 TRANSACTION PROCESSING IN A DISTRIBUTED SYSTEM

At ransaction is a logical unit of work constituted by one or more SQLs tatements executed by a single us er. At ransaction beg ins with the us er's first executable SQL statement and ends when it is committed or rolled back by that user.

A remote t ransaction contains only s tatements t hat access a s ingle r emote nod e. A distributed transaction contains statements that access multiple nodes.

The following sections define important concepts in transaction processing and explain how transactions access data in a distributed database:

- <u>Remote SQL Statements</u>
- Distributed SQL Statements
- Shared SQL for Remote and Distributed Statements
- <u>Remote Transactions</u>
- Distributed Transactions
- Two-Phase Commit Mechanism
- Database Link Name Resolution
- Schema Object Name Resolution

#### A. Remote SQL Statements

A remote query statement is a query that selects information from one or more remote tables, all of which reside at the same remote node. A remote u pdate statement is an update that modifies data in one or more tables, all of which are located at the same remote node.

#### **B. Distributed SQL Statements**

A distributed q uery statement r etrieves i nformation f rom t wo or m ore nodes . A distributed upd ate statement m odifies da ta o n t wo or m ore n odes. A di stributed update is possible using a PL/SQL subprogram unit such as a procedure or trigger that includes two or more remote updates that access data on different nodes.

#### C. Shared SQL for Remote and Distributed Statements

The mechanics of a remote or distributed statement using shared SQL are essentially the same as those of a local statement. The SQL text must match, and the referenced objects m ust m atch. If av ailable, s hared SQL areas c an be us ed for t he local a nd remote handling of any statement or decomposed query.

#### **D.** Remote Transactions

A remote transaction contains one or more remote statements, all of which reference a single remote node.

#### E. Distributed Transactions

A d istributed t ransaction is a t ransaction that i ncludes on e or m ore s tatements t hat, individually or as a group, update d ata o n two or m ore d istinct no des of a distributed database.

#### F. Two-Phase Commit Mechanism

A database m ust gu arantee t hat all s tatements in a transaction, distributed or n ondistributed, either c ommit or r oll b ack as a uni t. The effects of an ongoing transaction should be invisible to all other transactions at all nodes; this transparency should be true for transactions that include any type of operation, including queries, updates, or remote procedure calls.

The g eneral m echanisms of t ransaction c ontrol i n a no n-distributed dat abase ar e discussed i n t he Oracle D atabase C oncepts C oncepts. I n a di stributed da tabase, t he database m ust c oordinate t ransaction c ontrol w ith t he s ame c haracteristics ov er a network and maintain data consistency, even if a network or system failure occurs.

The d atabase two-phase c ommit mechanism guar antees t hat all database s ervers participating in a distributed transaction either all commit or all roll back the statements in the transaction. A two-phase commit mechanism also protects implicit DML operations performed by integrity constraints, remote procedure calls, and triggers.

#### G. Database Link Name Resolution

A global object name is a nob ject s pecified us ing a database link. The es sential components of a global object name are:

- Object name
- Database name
- Domain

Whenever a SQL statement includes a reference to a global object name, the database searches for a database link with a name that matches the database name specified in the global object name.

The d atabase per forms t his op eration t o d etermine t he pat h t o t he s pecified r emote database.

The database always searches for matching database links in the following order:

- 1. Private database links in the schema of the user who issued the SQL statement.
- 2. Public database links in the local database.
- 3. Global database links (only if a directory server is available).

#### H. Schema Object Name Resolution

After the local Oracle Database connects to the specified remote database on behalf of the local user t hat i ssued t he S QL s tatement, ob ject r esolution c ontinues as if t he remote user had issued the associated SQL statement. The first match determines the remote schema according to the following rules:

Type of Link Specified	Location of Object Resolution
A fixed user database link	Schema specified in the link creation statement
A connected user database link	Connected user's remote schema
A current user database link	Current user's schema

If t he da tabase c annot f ind t he ob ject, t hen i t c hecks pub lic obj ects of t he r emote database. If it cannot resolve the object, then the established remote session remains but the SQL statement cannot execute and returns an error.

## 3.9 DISTRIBUTED DATABASE APPLICATION DEVELOPMENT

Application development in a distributed system raises issues that are not applicable in a n on-distributed s ystem. T his s ection c ontains t he f ollowing t opics r elevant for distributed application development:

- Transparency in a Distributed Database System
- Remote Procedure Calls (RPCs)

• Distributed Query Optimization

### 3.9.1 TRANSPARENCY IN A DISTRIBUTED DATABASE SYSTEM

With m inimal ef fort, y ou c and evelop app lications t hat m ake a n O racle D atabase distributed database system transparent to users that work with the system. The goal of transparency is to m ake a di stributed dat abase system appear as though it is a s ingle Oracle D atabase. C onsequently, the system does not bur den d evelopers and us ers of the s ystem w ith c omplexities t hat w ould o therwise m ake di stributed database application development challenging and detract from user productivity.

The f ollowing s ections ex plain m ore about t ransparency in a distributed database system.

- A. Location Transparency: An O racle D atabase distributed dat abase s ystem has features that allow application developers and administrators to hide the physical location of dat abase o bjects f rom appl ications an d us ers. Location transparency exists when a user can universally refer to a database object such as a t able, r egardless of t he nod e t o w hich a n ap plication c onnects. Loc ation transparency has several benefits, including:
  - Access t o r emote dat a is s imple, b ecause da tabase us ers do no t ne ed t o know the physical location of database objects.
  - Administrators c an m ove d atabase obj ects w ith no i mpact on en d-users or existing database applications.

Typically, adm inistrators and d evelopers us e s ynonyms t o es tablish l ocation transparency for the tables and supporting objects in an application schema.

**B. SQL and COMMIT Transparency:** The O racle D atabase di stributed dat abase architecture al so provides quer y, update, an d t ransaction transparency. F or example, standard SQL statements such as SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE work j ust as t hey do in a non-distributed dat abase env ironment.

Additionally, app lications c ontrol t ransactions us ing t he s tandard S QL statements COMMIT, SAVEPOINT, and ROLLBACK.

**C. Replication Transparency:** The database also provide many features to transparently r eplicate d ata am ong t he nod es of t he s ystem. F or m ore information about O racle D atabase r eplication f eatures, s ee Oracle D atabase Advanced Replication.

## 3.9.2. REMOTE PROCEDURE CALLS (RPCS)

Developers c an c ode P L/SQL pac kages an d procedures t o s upport a pplications t hat work w ith a d istributed database. Applications c an m ake I ocal procedure c alls t o perform work at the local database and remote procedure calls (RPCs) to perform work at a remote database.

When a program c alls a r emote pr ocedure, t he l ocal s erver p asses al l procedure parameters to the remote server in the call.

In order for the RPC to succeed, the called procedure must exist at the remote site, and the user being connected to must have the proper privileges to execute the procedure.

When developing packages and procedures for distributed database systems, developers m ust c ode w ith an un derstanding of w hat pr ogram u nits should do at remote locations, and how to return the results to a calling application.

### 3.9.3 DISTRIBUTED QUERY OPTIMIZATION

Distributed query optimization is an Oracle Database feature that reduces the amount of data transfer r equired between s ites w hen a transaction r etrieves data f rom r emote tables referenced in a distributed SQL statement.

Distributed query o ptimization us es cost-based optimization t o f ind or generate S QL expressions that extract only the necessary data from remote tables, process that data

at a remote site or sometimes at the local site, and send the results to the local site for final pr ocessing. T his o peration r educes the amount of r equired d ata t ransfer when compared t o t he t ime it t akes t o t ransfer all t he t able da tat o the local site f or processing.

Using various cost-based optimizer hints such as DRIVING\_SITE, NO\_MERGE, and INDEX, you c an c ontrol w here O racle D atabase processes t he data and h ow it accesses the data.

#### > Check Your Progress

6. Define Distributed Database and Distributed Processing?

#### 7. What is Generic Connectivity in Heterogeneous Distributed Database?

.....

## 8. What is Database Links? Explain different types of Database Links.

9. Explain Distributed Query Optimization.

## .....

## 3.10LET US SUM UP

In this chapter, we have discussed about oracle architecture and instance. We have also explored m emory s tructure of O racle D atabase. We have c ome t o k now v ital processes, which is executes during database execution. We have also summarized storage s tructures a nd s upported f iles an d ar chitectures. After c ompletion of t his chapter we came to know about schemas and various schema objects.

## **3.11CHECK YOUR PROGRESS: POSSIBLE ANSWERS**

- Distributed d atabase is a s et of databases in a d istributed s ystem t hat c an appear to a pplications as a s ingle d ata s ource. W hile distributed pr ocessing is the operation that occurs when an application distributes its tasks among different computers in a network.
- 2. Generic connectivity enables you to connect to non-Oracle Database data stores by us ing e ither a Heterogeneous S ervices O DBC agent or a Heterogeneous Services OLE DB agent. The advantage to generic connectivity is that it may not be required for you to purchase and configure a separate system-specific agent. You use an ODBC or OLE DB driver that can interface with the agent.
- 3. A d atabase I ink is a c onnection be tween t wo ph ysical da tabase s ervers t hat allows a client to access them as one logical database. These bas ic I ink types differ according to which users are allowed access to the remote database:

Туре	Description
Private	Creates link in a s pecific schema of the local dat abase. O nly the owner of a private da tabase link or P L/SQL s ubprograms in the schema c an us e t his l ink t o ac cess dat abase o bjects i n t he corresponding remote database.
Public	Creates a d atabase-wide link. All us ers an d PL/SQL s ubprograms in the database can use the link to access database objects in the

Туре	Description
	corresponding remote database.
Global	Creates a network-wide I ink. W hen an O racle ne twork uses a
	directory server, the directory server automatically create and
	manages g lobal database l inks ( as net s ervice n ames) f or e very
	Oracle Database in the network. Users and PL/SQL subprograms in
	any d atabase c an us e a gl obal link t o ac cess obj ects i n t he
	corresponding remote database.

**4.** Distributed quer y opt imization is an O racle D atabase f eature t hat r educes t he amount of data transfer required between sites when a transaction retrieves data from remote tables referenced in a distributed SQL statement.

## 3.12ASSIGNMENTS

- 1. Explain Homogenous and Heterogeneous Distributed Database.
- 2. Explain Transaction Processing in Distributed Database.
- 3. Describe Security Aspects in Distributed Database.
- 4. What is Database Links? Describe different users of Database Links in details.

## 3.13 Further Reading

1. Expert O racle D atabase Architecture, T hird E dition, D arl K uhn & T homas K yte, Apress Publishing.

2. Oracle Database 10g The Complete Reference, Kevin Loney, Oracle Press.

# Unit 4: Database Backup

## **Unit Structure**

- 4.1. Learning Objectives & Outcomes
- 4.2. Introduction
- 4.3. Logical Database Backup
- 4.4. Physical Database Backup
- 4.5. Let Us Sum Up
- 4.6. Check your progress: Possible Answers
- Assignments 4.7.
- Further Reading 4.8.

## 4.1 LEARNING OBJECTIVES & OUTCOMES

The objective of this chapter is to make the students,

- To understand Types of Oracle Backups
- To understand the Logical Backup Plan (Export/Import)
- To understand the Physical Backup & Recovery

#### Outcome:

At the end of this unit,

• Students will be completely aw are with Logical and Physical Backup Strategies of Oracle database.

- Students will able to Perform Export/Import with its different parameter.
- Students will be aware with different mode of Online and Offline Backup.

• S tudents will be a ware with how t o m ake database r eady f or physical database backup.

## **4.2 INTRODUCTION**

A backup is a representative copy of d ata. T his copy can include important parts of a database such as the control file, redo logs, and datafiles. A backup protects data from application error and acts as a safeguard against unexpected data loss, by providing a way to restore original data.

Backups are divided into physical backups and I ogical backups. Physical backups are copies of physical d atabase files. The phrase "backup and recovery" usually refers to the transfer of c opied files from o ne location t o an other, a long with t he v arious operations performed on these files.

In c ontrast, I ogical bac kups c ontain dat a t hat i s ex ported us ing S QL c ommands and stored in a binary file. Oracle records both committed and uncommitted changes in redo log buffers. Logical backups are used to supplement physical backups.

Restoring a physical backup m eans r econstructing it and m aking it available to the Oracle server. To recover a restored backup, data is updated using redo records from the transaction log. The transaction log records changes made to the database after the backup was taken.

#### Elements of a Backup And Recovery Strategy

Although backup and recovery operations can be intricate and vary from one business to another, the basic principles follow these four simple steps:

- 1. Multiplex the online redo logs
- 2. Run t he database i n A RCHIVELOG m ode and archive r edo logs t o m ultiple locations
- 3. Maintain multiple concurrent backups of the control file
- 4. Take f requent b ackups of ph ysical da tafiles and s tore t hem i n a s afe p lace, making multiple copies if possible

As long as users have backups of the database and archive redo logs in safe storage, the original database can be recreated.

## 4.3 LOGICAL DATABASE BACKUP

Oracle ut ility Import/Export ar e used t o p erform Log ical D atabase O peration, w hich allow us to make exports & imports of the data objects, and t ransfer the data across databases t hat r eside on d ifferent har dware pl atforms on di fferent O racle versions.Export (exp) an d i mport (imp) ut ilities ar e us ed t o p erform l ogical database backup a nd r ecovery. W hen ex porting, database objects ar e dum ped t o a bi nary file which can then be imported into another Oracle database.

From Oracle 10g, users can choose between using the old imp/exp utilities, or the newly introduced Data pum p utilities, c alled e xpdp an d i mpdp. T hese new ut ilities i ntroduce much needed performance improvements, network based exports and imports, etc.

Various parameters are available to control what o bjects are exported or imported. To get a list of available parameters, r unt he exp or imputilities w ith the help=yes parameter.

The export/import utilities are commonly used to perform the following tasks:

- Backup and recovery (small databases only)
- Move data between Oracle databases on different platforms.
- Reorganization o f d ata/ eliminate dat abase f ragmentation (export, dr op an d r eimport tables)
- Upgrade databases from extremely old versions of Oracle
- Detect database corruption. Ensure that all the data can be read
- Transporting tablespaces between databases

#### A. Different Modes of Export/Import Utility

- 1. Full Export: The EXP\_FULL\_DATABASE and IMP\_FULL\_DATABASE, respectively, are ne eded to p erform a f ull e xport. Use the full export par ameter for a full export.
- 2. Tablespace: Use the tablespaces export parameter for a tablespace export.
- 3. User: This mode c an b e us ed to export an d import all objects that belong t o a user. Use the owner export parameter and the fromuser import parameter for a user (owner) export-import.
- **4. Table:** Specific tables (and partitions) can be exported/imported with table export mode. Use the tables export parameter for a table export.

## 4.3.1 EXPORT UTILITY

This utility can be used to transfer data objects between <u>oracle databases</u>. The objects and the data in <u>Oracle database</u> can be moved to other <u>Oracle database</u> running even on a different hardware and software configurations.

The export utility copies database definitions and actual data into an operating system file (export file). The export file is an Oracle binary-format dump file (with .dmp), which is normally created on disk or tape. Before exporting we must ensure that there is enough space available on the disk or tape used.

Exported dump files c an be r ead o nly by using the Import utility of O racle. W e c annot use ear lier v ersions of i mport utility f or importing t he da ta ex ported using c urrent version.

EXP command can be used to invoke export utility interactively without any parameters. Parameters also can be specified in a file called parameter file. We can use more than one parameter file at a time with exp command.

#### General Parameters are used with $\exp$ command are as:

- Full: Use this parameter to specify <u>full export mode</u>.
- **Tablespaces:** Use this parameter to specify <u>tablespace export mode</u>.
- **Owner:** Use this parameter to specify <u>user export mode</u>.
- **Tables:** Use this parameter to specify <u>table export mode</u>.
- **Query:** Restricts the exported rows by means of a where clause. The query parameter can only be used for <u>table export mode</u>. For obvious reasons, it must be appliable to all exported tables.
- **Parfile:** Specifies a parfile. Parameter file is a simple text files creating using any text editor.

There are basically 3 types of exports like Full, Owner, and Table. **Full export** exports all the objects, structures and data within the database for all schemas. **Owner export** exports only t he o bjects ow ned by s pecific us er ac count. **Table export** exports on ly tables owned by a specific user account.

To export a t able w e c an r un E XP ut ility ei ther i nteractively or by p utting al I the parameters f or t he e xport on t he c ommand I ine. I n i nteractive m ode j ust t ype E XP

before the command prompt and ans wer the questions when prompted, otherwise the parameters can be typed on the command line as shown below.

#### Examples:

1. We want to export EMP table f rom s cott/tiger (username and password respectively) users and exported data will be stored into dump file namely emp as a command line parameter.

#### EXP scott/tiger file=emp.dmp tables=(EMP)

2. We want to export E MP table f rom s cott/tiger (username and password respectively) users and exported dat a will be stored into dump file namely empininteractive mode.

📾 C:\WINDOWS\system32\cmd.exe - EXP
C:\>EXP
Export: Release 10.1.0.2.0 - Production on Sat Apr 23 22:39:01 2005
Copyright (c) 1982, 2004, Oracle. All rights reserved.
Username: SCOTT Password:
Connected to: Oracle Database 10g Enterprise Edition Release 10.1.0.2.0 - Produ tion With the Partitioning, OLAP and Data Mining options Enter array fetch buffer size: 4096 >
Export file: EXPDAT.DMP > D:\abc.dmp
<pre>(2)U(sers), or (3)T(ables): (2)U &gt; 3</pre>
Export table data (yes/no): yes ) y
Compress extents (yes∕no): yes > n
Export done in WE8MSWIN1252 character set and AL16UTF16 NCHAR character set
About to export specified tables via Conventional Path Table(T) or Partition(T:P) to be exported: (RETURN to quit) > EMP
exporting table EMP 14 rows exported Table(T) or Partition(T:P) to be exported: (RETURN to quit) >

Figure 8.1: Exporting single table in interactively mode.

3. We want to export emp table with deptno=10 in non-interactive mode.



Figure 8.2: Exporting conditional rows in non-interactively mode.

## 4.3.2 IMPORT UTILITY

IMP command can be used to invoke import utility interactively without any parameters. Import utility is used to extract objects from export dump file created using export utility. We c an us e m ore t han o ne par ameter f ile at a time w ith exp c ommand. Various parameters of Import Utility are described as follow:

- FFER: The integer specified for BUFFER is the size, in bytes, of the buffer through which data rows are transferred.
- COMMIT: Specifies whether Import should commit after each array insert. By default, Import commits only after loading each table, and Import performs a rollback when an error occurs, before continuing with the next object.
- CONSTRAINTS: Specifies whether or not table constraints are to be imported. The default is to import constraints. If you do not want constraints to be imported, you must set the parameter value to n.
- FILE:Specifies the names of the export files to import. The default extension is .dmp, because Export supports multiple export files, you may need to specify multiple filenames to be imported.
- FROMUSER: The parameter enables you to import a subset of schemas from an export file containing multiple schemas.
- FULL: Specifies whether to import the entire export dump file.
- GRANTS: Specifies whether to import object grants.
- PARFILE:Specifies a filename for a file that contains a list of Import parameters. For more information about using a parameter file, see <u>Parameter</u> <u>Files</u>.
- ROWS: Specifies whether or not to import the rows of table data.
- TABLES: Specifies that the import is a table-mode import and lists the table names and partition and sub partition names to import. Table-mode import lets you import entire partitioned or non-partitioned tables.
- TOUSER: Specifies a list of user names whose schemas will be targets for Import. The user names must exist prior to the import operation; otherwise an error is returned. The IMP\_FULL\_DATABASE role is required to use this parameter. To import to a different schema than the one that originally contained the object, specify TOUSER.
- USERID: Specifies the username/password (and optional connect string) of the user performing the import.


Figure 8.3: Example of Import Utility in Interactive mode.

It is possible to import dump created using an earlier (version 8.1.7 utility) version can be imported using the later version utility (Version 9.0.1 utility). We should not use later version u tilities to export dat a from earlier dat abase versions. But a nearlier utility can be used to export later versions of da tabase. For example you can export data from Oracle9i us ing 8.1.7 utility a nd can import that exported file into or acle 8i dat abase using import utility 8.1.7.

## 4.4 PHYSICAL DATABASE BACKUP

## **4.4.1 BACKUP**

Backups can be combined in a variety of ways. For example, we can take weekly whole database backups, to ensure a relatively current copy of original database information, but take daily backups of the most accessed tablespaces. The DBA can also multiplex the all important control file and archived redo log as an additional safeguard.

A. Online Database Backup: An online backup or also known as an open backup is a backup in w hich all r ead-write da tafiles a nd c ontrol files ha ve not be en c heck pointed with respect to the same SCN. If the database must be up and running 24 hours a day, 7 days a week, then you have no choice but to perform online backups of a whole database which is in ARCHIVELOG mode.

**B. Offline Database Backup:** In t his bac kup, al I d atafiles an d c ontrol f iles ar e consistent to the same point in time - consistent with respect to the same SCN. This type of backup allows the user to open the set of files created by the backup without applying r edo logs, s ince t he d ata is already consistent. The on ly w ay t o per form this type of backup is to shut down the database cleanly and make the backup while the dat abase i s closed. A consistent whole dat abase bac kup is t he o nly v alid backup option for databases running in NOARCHIVELOG mode.

Whole Database Backup: The most common type of backup, a whole database backup c ontains the c ontrol f ile along with all database f iles that belong to a database. If operating in ARCHIVELOG mode, the D BA also has the option of backing up different parts of the database over a period of time, thereby constructing a whole database backup piece by piece.

**Tablespace Backups:** At ablespace bac kup is a subset of the dat abase. Tablespace backups are only valid if the database is operating in ARCHIVELOG mode. The only time at ablespace bac kup is valid for a database running in NOARCHIVELOG mode is when that tablespace is read-only or offline-normal.

**Datafile Backups:** A datafile b ackup is a backup of a s ingle da tafile. D atafile backups, which are not as common as tablespace backups and are only valid if the database is run in ARCHIVELOG mode. The only time a datafile backup is valid for a database running in NOARCHIVELOG mode is if that datafile is the only file in a tablespace.

**Control File Backups:** A control file backup is a backup of a database's control file. If a database is open, the user can create a v alid backup by issuing the following SQL statement: **ALTER DAT ABASE BACKUP CONTROLFILE** to 'location'; or use Recovery Manager (RMAN). **Archived Redo Log Backups:** Archived redo logs are the key to successful media recovery. Depending on the disk space a vailable and the number of transactions executed on the database, you want to keep as many days of archive logs on disk and you want to back them up regularly to ensure a more complete recovery.

**Configuration Files:** Configuration files may consist of spfile or init.ora, pas sword file, the the section of the section o

#### 4.4.1.1 Types of Backup

There are basically two types of Backup we can take for Oracle Database.

#### I. OFFLINE Backup

When dat abase is D OWN, no ac tivity r unning on database, no one accessing t he database, that time taken database backup called OFFLINE BACKUP. It is also known as **offline** or **consistent** database backup. Database do esn't r equire ARCHIVELOG mode for COLD backup. To take offline backup we must need to SHUTDOWN Oracle Database and stop Database service.

#### II. ONLINE Backup

When dat abase is ope n, us er ac cessing t he d atabase t hat t ime w e t aken b ackup is called o nline, ho t or inconsistent b ackup. Database m ust r equire ARCHIVELOG m ode for HOT backup.

#### Making User-Managed Backups of Online Tablespaces and Datafiles

You can back up all or only specific datafiles of an online tablespace while the database is open. The procedure differs depending on whether the online tablespace is read/write or read-only. You should not back up temporary tablespaces.

#### Making User-Managed Backups of Online Read/Write Tablespaces

You must put a read/write tablespace in backup mode to make us er-managed dat afile backups when the tablespace is online and the dat abase is open. The **ALTERTABLESPACE ... BEGINBACKUP** statement places a tablespace in backup mode. In backup mode, the database copies whole changed data blocks into the redo stream. After you take the tablespace out of backup mode with the **ALTERTABLESPACE...ENDBACKUP** or **ALTERDATABASEENDBACKUP** statement, the database advances the datafile header to the current database checkpoint.

When restoring a datafile backed up in this way, the database asks for the appropriate set of redo log files to apply if recovery be needed. The redo logs contain all changes required to recover the datafiles and make them consistent.

To back up online read/write tablespaces in an open database:

- 1. Before be ginning a bac kup of a t ablespace, i dentify all of the d atafiles in the tablespace with the DBA\_DATA\_FILES data dictionary view.
- Mark the beginning of the online t ablespace b ackup. F or e xample, the f ollowing statement marks the start of an online backup for the tablespace users:
   ALTER TABLESPACE users BEGIN BACKUP;
- 3. Back up t he on line dat afiles of t he onl ine tablespace w ith oper ating s ystem commands.
- After bac king u p t he d atafiles of t he onl ine t ablespace, r un t he S QL s tatement ALTERTABLESPACE with the ENDBACKUP option.
   ALTER TABLESPACE users END BACKUP;

149

5. Archive t he u n-archived r edo l ogs s o t hat the r edo r equired t o r ecover t he tablespace backup is archived.

#### ALTER SYSTEM ARCHIVE LOG CURRENT;

#### Making User-Managed Backups of the Control File

Back up the control file of a d atabase a fter m aking a s tructural m odification to a database op erating in ARCHIVELOG mode. To back up a d atabase's control file, you must have the ALTERDATABASE system privilege.

#### Backing Up the Control File to a Binary File

The pr imary m ethod f or backing up the c ontrol f ile is t o us e a S QL statement to generate a binary file. A binary backup is preferable t o a t race f ile backup because it contains add itional information s uch as the archived log history, offline range for readonly and offline tablespaces, and backup sets and copies (if you use RMAN). Note that binary control file backups do not include tempfile entries.

To back up the control file after a structural change:

• Back up the database's control file, specifying a filename for the output binary file.

#### ALTER DATABASE BACKUP CONTROLFILE TO '/disk1/backup/cf.bak' REUSE;

Specify the REUSE option to make the new control file overwrite one that currently exists.

#### Making User-Managed Backups of Archived Redo Logs

To s ave d isk s pace in your pr imary archiving l ocation, you m ay w ant to back up archived l ogs t o t ape or t o an al ternative di sk l ocation. If y ou ar chive t o m ultiple locations, then only back up one copy of each log sequence number.

## 4.4.2 RECOVERY

Basic recovery involves two parts: restoring a physical backup and then updating it with the changes made to the database since the last backup. The most important aspect of recovery is making s ure all dat a files are consistent with respect to the same point in time. Oracle has integrity checks that prevent the user from opening the database until all data files are consistent with one another.

#### A. RECOVERY PROCESS

In every type of recovery, Oracle sequentially applies redo data to data blocks. Oracle uses information in the control file and datafile headers to ascertain whether recovery is necessary. Recovery has two parts: rolling forward and rolling back. When Oracle rolls forward, it applies redo records to the corresponding data blocks. Oracle systematically goes t hrough t he r edo l og t o det ermine w hich c hanges i t ne eds t o ap ply t o w hich blocks, and then changes the blocks. For example, if a user adds a row to a table, but the s erver c rashes bef ore it c an s ave t he c hange to d isk, O racle c an us e t he r edo record for this transaction to update the data block to reflect the new row.

Once O racle has c ompleted t he r olling f orward s tage, t he O racle d atabase c an be opened. The rollback phase begins after the database is open. The rollback information is s tored i n t ransaction t ables. O racle s earches t hrough t he t able for u ncommitted transactions, un doing an y t hat it f inds. F or ex ample, if t he us er nev er c ommitted t he SQL s tatement t hat ad ded t he r ow, t hen O racle w ill d iscover this fact i n a t ransaction table and undo the change.

#### • Responding to the Loss of a Subset of the Current Control Files

Use the following procedures to recover a database if a permanent media failure has damaged on e or more control files of a database and at least one current control file has not been damaged by the media failure.

• Copying a Multiplexed Control File to a Default Location

If the disk and file system containing the lost control file are intact, then you can simply copy one of the intact control files to the location of the missing control file. In this case, you do not have to edit the CONTROL\_FILES initialization parameter.

• To replace a damaged control file by copying a multiplexed control file:

If the instance is still running, then shut it down: SQL> SHUTDOWN ABORT

Correct the har dware problem that caused the media failure. If you cannot repair the hardware problem quickly, then proceed with database recovery by restoring damaged control files to an alternative storage device.

Use a n i ntact multiplexed c opy of the d atabase's c urrent c ontrol file to c opy o ver t he damaged control files.

Start a new instance and mount and open the database. SQL> STARTUP

#### • Determining Which Datafiles Require Recovery

You c an us e t he dy namic per formance view V\$RECOVER\_FILE to d etermine w hich files to restore in preparation for media recovery. This view lists all files that need to be recovered, and explains why they need to be recovered.

The following query displays the file ID numbers of datafiles that require media recovery as well as the reason for recovery (if k nown) and the SCN and time when recovery needs to begin:

#### **SELECT \* FROM V\$RECOVER\_FILE;**

Query V\$DATAFILE and V\$TABLESPACE to obtain filenames and t ablespace n ames for datafiles requiring recovery.

#### • Restoring Datafiles

If a media failure permanently damages one or more datafiles of a database, then you must restore backups of these datafiles before you can recover the damaged files. If you cannot restore a damaged datafile to its original location (for example, you must replace a disk, so you restore the files to an alternate disk), then you must indicate the new locations of these files to the control file.

If y ou are r estoring a n O racle file o n a r aw d isk or par tition, t hen t he procedure is basically the same as when restoring to a file on a file system. However, you must be aware of the naming conventions for files on raw devices (which differ depending on the operating system), and use an operating system utility that supports raw devices.

#### To restore backup datafiles to their default location:

- 1. Determine which datafiles to recover by using the techniques described in "Determining Which Datafiles Require Recovery".
- 2. If the database is ope n, t hen take t he t ablespaces c ontaining t he i naccessible datafiles offline.

#### ALTER TABLESPACE users OFFLINE IMMEDIATE;

- 3. Copy backups of the d amaged da tafiles to their de fault l ocation us ing o perating system commands.
- 4. Recover the affected tablespace. For example, enter: RECOVER TABLESPACE users
- 5. Bring the recovered tablespace online. For example, enter: ALTER TABLESPACE users ONLINE;

#### **Recovering After the Loss of Archived Redo Log Files:**

If the database is operating in ARCHIVELOG mode, and if the only copy of an archived redo log file is damaged, then the damaged file does not affect the present operation of the database. The following situations can arise, however, depending on when the redo log was written and when you backed up the datafile.

#### > Check Your Progress

#### 10. Describe Basic Principles for Backup Strategy?

#### 11. Which role has to grant for Full Database Export/Import?

.....

.....

12. Which Parameter of Import Utility is used to Prevent rollback when error occurs ?

.....

.....

13. What do you mean by Inconsistent Backup?

.....

.....

.....

14. How to find File names and Tablespace names for datafile requiring recovery?

.....

.....

## 4.5 LET US SUM UP

In t his c hapter, w e h ave di scussed about di fferent t ypes or D atabase B ackup Strategies like Logical Backup and Physical Backup. In which conditions we have to perform I ogical bac kup. W e hav e al so I earnt d ifferent par ameters f or Import/Export utility of O racle. Also w e ha ve d ifferent t ypes of ph ysical bac kup I ike hot a nd c old backup and try to describe all the possible aspects of both types of physical backups and recovery strategies.

## 4.6 CHECK YOUR PROGRESS: POSSIBLEANSWERS

- 1. Basic principles follow these four simple steps:
  - Multiplex the online redo logs
  - Run t he database i n A RCHIVELOG m ode and archive r edo logs t o m ultiple locations
  - Maintain multiple concurrent backups of the control file
  - Take f requent bac kups of phy sical dat afiles and s tore t hem in a s afe pl ace, making multiple copies if possible
- 2. The EXP\_FULL\_DATABASE and IMP\_FULL\_DATABASE, r espectively, ar e needed to perform a full export.
- COMMIT specifies whether Import should commit after successfully execution of Import.
- 4. Inconsistent B ackup m eans a b ackup t aken w hen database is open and database m ust require ARCHIVELOG m ode for it. It is also known as HOT Backup.
- 5. V\$DATAFILE and V\$TABLESPACE data dictionary is used to obtain filenames and tablespace names for datafiles requiring recovery

## 4.7 ASSIGNMENTS

- 1. Explain Different Command line Parameters for EXPORT with example.
- 2. Explain Different Command line Parameters for IMPORT with example.
- 3. Define Online Backup? How can we Backup Read/Write Tablespace?
- 4. Explain Recovery Process in detail.

## 4.8 Further Reading

1. Oracle D atabase 11g: B ackup and R ecovery U ser's G uide, Lanc e Ashdown, Oracle Press.

2. Oracle Database 10g The Complete Reference, Kevin Loney, Oracle Press.

# Block-3 Oracle Server and SQL

## Unit 1: Structured Query Language

## **Unit Structure**

- 1.1. Learning Objectives & Outcomes
- 1.2. Introduction
- 1.3. Basic Data Types of SQL
- 1.4. SQL Statements
- 1.5. Data Definition Statements
- 1.6. Constraints
- 1.7. Data Manipulation Statements
- 1.8. SQL Operators
- 1.9. Oracle Built-in Functions
- 1.10. SQL Joins
- 1.11. Sub Queries
- 1.12. Sub Views
- 1.13. SQL Indexes
- 1.14. SQL Sequence
- 1.15. Let Us Sum Up
- 1.16. Check your progress: Possible Answers
- 1.17. Assignments
- 1.18. Further Reading

## **1.1 LEARNING OBJECTIVES & OUTCOMES**

The objective of this chapter is to make the students,

- To understand SQL and its Process Architecture
- To learn various types of SQL Statements
- To understand SQL Operators & Functions.
- To learn Joins and Sub Queries in SQL.
- To Understand Views, Index and Sequence.

#### Outcome:

At the end of this unit,

- Students will be completely aware with Architecture of SQL.
- Students will come to know the SQL statements in detail.
- Students will be able to write queries to retrieve data from tables as per organization requirements.
- Students will be able to create different SQL objects like Tables, Views, Indexes etc.

## **1.2 INTRODUCTION**

**SQL** is an ANSI standard computer language, which is used for storing, manipulating and r etrieving data s tored in r elational dat abase. SQL is the s tandard language for Relational Database System.

#### SQL Process

When executing a n SQL commands, system first determines the best way to carry out SQL query request and SQL engine figure out how to interpret the task. There are various components i ncluded in the process which is known as Query Dispatcher, Optimization Engines, Classic Query Engine and SQL Query Engine etc.



Figure-9.1 Simple diagram of SQL

Above f igure s hows t hat w hen S QL Q uery w ill f ire f irst Q uery L anguage P rocess parses and o ptimize S QL query and pass the optimized version into the D atabase engine.

## **1.3 BASIC DATA TYPES OF SQL**

Oracle Database provides following b asic dat a types for attributes d efined with CREATE TABLE clause of database.

Data Types	Description
Char (N)	Fixed Len gth C haracter D ata. <b>Maximum</b>
	size is 2000 bytes. Default or Minimum
	Size 1 Byte.
Varchar (N)	Variable Le ngth Character Data. Maximum
	up to 2000 characters.
Varchar2 (N)	Variable Le ngth C haracter D ata. Maximum

	up to 4000 characters.
Nvarchar2 (N)	Variable-length U nicode c haracter s tring
	having maximum size is determined by the
	national c haracter s et d efinition, w ith a n
	upper limit of <b>4000 bytes</b> .
Number (P,S)	Numeric dat a t ype f or i ntegers and R eal
	Numbers. P = Overall number of Digits.
	Maximum values 38. S = Number of
	digits to the right of the decimal point.
FLOAT (p)	A subtype of t he NUMBER data t ype.
	A FLOAT value r equires f rom <b>1 to 22</b>
	bytes.
LONG	Variable Length Character Data ( <b>Up to</b>
	2GB)
Date	Date data type for storing date and time.
	The size is fixed at <b>7 bytes</b> .
BINARY_FLOAT	32-bit floating point number.
BINARY_DOUBLE	64-bit floating point number.
RAW & LONG R AW	RAW Binary Data
	RAW: Maximum size is 2000 bytes.
	LONG RAW: Maximum up to 2GB
CLOB	Character Data ( <b>Up to 4GB</b> )
NCLOB	Character D ata c ontaining Unicod
	characters. ( <b>Up to 4GB</b> )
BLOB	Binary Data ( <b>Up to 4GB</b> )
BFILE	Binary D ata s tored into ex ternal file ( <b>Up to</b>
	4GB)
ROWID	A base-64 number system representing
	the unique address of a raw in its table.
UROWID	A base-64 number system representing

	the logical ad dress of a r aw of an <b>indexed</b> organized table.
DATETIME Data Types	
TIMESTAMP	Date with Fractional Seconds
INTERVAL YEAR TO MONTH	Stored as an interval of years and months.
INTERVAL DAY TO SECOND	Stored as a n i nterval of days, h ours, minutes and seconds.

## **1.4 SQL STATEMENTS**

SQL s tatement includes dat a insert, qu ery, up date and de lete, s chema c reation and modification and data access c ontrol. B ased u pon that SQL s tatements are divided into different categories as described below:

Data Manipulation Language (DML)		
SELECT	Retrieve certain record from one or more tables or views.	
INSERT	Create new record into the table.	
UPDATE	Modify existing record(s).	
DELETE	Delete existing record(s).	
MERGE	Conditionally i nsert or u pdate d ata de pending o n i ts presence, also known as UPSERT.	
	presence, also known as UPSERT.	

Data Definition Language (DDL)	
CREATE	Create New O bjects in D atabase like T able, View Index,
	etc.
ALTER	Modify the existing object.
DROP	Destroying an existing object.
RENAME	Change the name of existing object.
TRUNCATE	Deleting an existing object. (Drop and Re-Create)
COMMENT	Provides Single line or multi line comment(s).

Data Control Language (DCL)	
GRANT	Gives different Privileges to the user.
REVOKE	Tack back privileges which is previously granted from user.

Transaction Control Language (TCL)		
COMMITE	Make permanent all changes performed in the transaction.	
ROLLBACK	Undo all uncommitted works done by the transaction(s).	
SAVEPOINT	Identify a point in a transaction to which you can later roll	
	back.	

## **1.5 DATA DEFINITION STATEMENTS**

Data D efinition S tatements of the SQL is us ed t o c reate d ifferent dat abase objects and manage that objects.

## 1.5.1. CREATE TABLE

Create Table clause is used to create a new database objects like table, view, index etc. Syntax:

For each column, a name and a data type must be specified and the column name must be unique within table definition. Columns are separated by colons.

## 1.5.2. ALTER TABLE

ALTER T ABLEcommand is used to a dd, delete or modify columns in a nexisting table. You would a lso us e ALTER T ABLE command to add a nd drop various constraints on an existing table.

#### Syntax:

ALTER TABLE <TABLE NAME> ADD/MODIFY/DROP column [datatype];

#### 1.5.3. DROP TABLE

It is used to delete remove entire table with structure from the database.

#### Syntax:

DROP TABLE < TABLE NAME> ;

#### 1.5.4. TRUNCATE TABLE

The TRUNCATE TABLE command is used to delete complete data from an existing table.

#### Syntax:

#### TRUNCATE TABLE < TABLE NAME> ;

Example:

1. Create Salesman Table with Salesman No as a Primary Key and Salesman Name as a mandatory field.

## CREATE TABLE SALESMAN ( SNUM NUMBER (4) PRIMARY KEY, SNAME VARCHAR2(30) NOT NULL, CITY VARCHAR2(30), COMM NUMBER(4,2) );

- Add New Column Mobile No into Salesman Table.
   ALTER TABLE SALESMAN ADD (MOBILE NUMBER (10));
- Remove Customer Table.
   DROP TABLE CUSTOMER.

## **1.6 CONSTRAINTS**

Constraints are the rules enforced on data columns on table. These are used to limit the types of d ata that c an go into the table. Constraint c ould be applied a t c olumn level or table level. **Column level constraints** are applied only one column whereas **Table level constraints** are applied to the whole table. There are two types of data constraints that can be applied to data being inserted into the tables.

## 1.6.1. VO CONSTRAINTS

This data constraint determines the speed at which data can be inserted or extracted from a table.

#### A. PRIMARY KEY

Primary key is a filed in a table which is uniquely identifies each row (or record) in a database t able. Primary key field m ust be m andatory m eans c an't ha ve n ull v alues and m ust be uni que v alues. A t able c an h ave o nly one pr imary key, w hich m ay consist of s ingle or m ultiple fields. W hen P rimary key c reated on s ingle field it is

known as **Single Field Primary Key** and when Primary key created on multiple fields it is known as **Composite Primary Key**.

#### Examples:

1. Single Field Primary Key at Column Level:

Below example shows the Salesman table with SNUM as Primary key created at column level.

```
CREATE TABLE SALESMAN
```

(

SNUM	NUMBER (4) PRIMARY KEY,
SNAME	VARCHAR2(30) NOT NULL,
CITY	VARCHAR2(30),
COMM	NUMBER(4,2)

);

#### 2. Composite Primary Key at Table Level:

Below example shows the Salesman table with SNUM and BCODE as Composite Primary key.

```
CREATE TABLE SALESMAN
```

(

```
SNUMNUMBER (4),BCODENUMBER (4),SNAMEVARCHAR2(30) NOT NULL,CITYVARCHAR2(30),COMMNUMBER(4,2),PRIMARY KEY (SNUM,BCODE)
```

#### );

#### B. FOREIGN KEY / REFERENCE KEY

Foreign key (or reference key) is a column or a combination of columns whose values match a Primary key in a different table. The relationship between tables matches the primary key in one of the tables with foreign key in other tables. The referencing table is called the child table, and the referenced table is called the parent table.

Examples:

```
1. Reference Key at Column Level:

CREATE TABLE CUSTOMER

(

CNUM NUMBER (4) PRIMARY KEY,

CNAME VARCHAR2(30) NOT NULL,

CITY VARCHAR2(30),

RATTING NUMBER(3),

SNUM NUMBER (4) CONSTRAINT FK_SNUM REFERENCES SALESMAN

);
```

In this example, the column S NUM of C USTOMER table (Child Table) builds the foreign key namely FK\_SNUM and references the Primary key of SALESMAN table (Parent Table).

## 2. Reference Key at Table Level:

```
CREATE TABLE CUSTOMER
(
CNUM NUMBER (4) PRIMARY KEY,
CNAME VARCHAR2(30) NOT NULL,
CITY VARCHAR2(30),
RATTING NUMBER(3),
SNUM NUMBER (4),
CONSTRAINT FK_SNUM FOREIGN KEY (SNUM) REFERENCES SALESMAN
(SNUM)
);
```

## **1.6.2. BUSINESS RULE CONSTRAINTS**

Business R ule constraints allow application of business rules to table columns. These rules are applied to data, prior the data is being inserted into the table columns.

#### A. UNIQUE

The U NIQUE c onstraint pr events du plicate v alues i n t he c olumn. B ut i t p ermits multiple NULL values i n t he c olumn. S ame as pr imary k ey unique c onstraint al so create unique index on the field.

#### Examples:

#### Unique Key at Column Level:

CREATE TABLE CUSTOMER

```
(
CNUM
          NUMBER (4) PRIMARY KEY,
CNAME
          VARCHAR2(30) NOT NULL,
CITY
          VARCHAR2(30),
EMAL
          VARCHAR2(30) CONSTRAINT CUST_EMAIL_UK UNIQUE,
RATTING
          NUMBER(3),
SNUM
          NUMBER (4)
                       CONSTRAINT
                                    FK SNUM
                                              REFERENCES
SALESMAN
);
```

#### **B. NOT NULL**

In or acle, by d efault c olumn c an hold N ULL v alues. If you do n ot w ant a c olumn to have a N ULL v alues, then you need to define NOT N ULL constraint on t hat column. NOT NULL constraints only implemented at column level.

Examples:

```
CREATE TABLE CUSTOMER
(
CNUM NUMBER (4) PRIMARY KEY,
CNAME VARCHAR2(30) NOT NULL,
CITY VARCHAR2(30),
EMAIL VARCHAR2(30) C ONSTRAINT C UST_EMAIL_UK
UNIQUE,
RATTING NUMBER(3) NOT NULL,
```

```
SNUM NUMBER (4 ) C ONSTRAINT F K_SNUM R EFERENCES
SALESMAN
);
```

#### C. CHECK CONSTRAINT

Business Rule validations can be applied to a table column by using check constraint. Check constraint must be specified as a logical expression that evaluates either to TRUE or FALSE.

Examples:

#### Check constraint at Table Level:

```
CREATE TABLE CUSTOMER
```

```
(
 CNUM
           NUMBER (4) PRIMARY KEY,
 CNAME
           VARCHAR2(30) NOT NULL,
 CITY
           VARCHAR2(30),
 RATTING
           NUMBER(3),
 SNUM
           NUMBER (4)
                                     FK SNUM REFERENCES
                        CONSTRAINT
 SALESMAN,
 CONSTRAINT CUST_NAME_CHK CHECK (CNAME = UPPER (CNAME)),
 CONSTRAINT CUST RATTING CHK CHECK (RATING >= 100)
```

);

Above example create CUSTOMER table, where Name of customer must be consist of upper case letters only and minimum ratting of customer is 100.

#### D. DEFAULT VALUE

The D EFAULT c onstraint pr ovides a def ault v alue t o a c olumn w hen a r ecord i s loaded into the table, and the column is left empty.

Examples:

CREATE TABLE CUSTOMER

```
(

CNUM NUMBER (4) PRIMARY KEY,

CNAME VARCHAR2(30) NOT NULL,

CITY VARCHAR2(30),

RATTING NUMBER(3) DEFAULT 100,

SNUM NUMBER (4) CONSTRAINT FK_SNUM REFERENCES

SALESMAN

);
```

Above example create CUSTOMER table with RATTING field is set to 100 by default.

## **1.7 DATA MANIPULATION STATEMENTS**

## **1.7.1. INSERT INTO STATEMENT**

Insert I nto statement is us ed to insert r ecords into the d atabase table. The G eneral syntax of INSERT INTO clause as given below:

## INSERT INTO <TABLE NAME> [(Column1, Column2..., ColumnN)] VALUES (Value1, Value2..., ValueN)

Here, column1, column2 ..., columnN are the names of the columns in the table into which you want to insert data. You may not need to specify the column(s) name in the SQL query if you are adding values for all the columns of the table.

#### Example:

- 1. INSERT INTO SALESMAN VALUES (1001, 'BADAL', 'PATAN', 0.12);
- INSERT INTO SALESMAN (SNUM, SNAME, COMM) VALUES (1002, 'VIRAL', 0.09);

## 1.7.2. UPDATE STATEMENT

The **UPDATE** Query is us ed to modify the existing records in a table. You can us e WHERE clause with UPDATE query to update selected rows, otherwise all the rows would be affected. General Syntax of Update Clause as:

```
UPDATE <TABLE_NAME> SET column1 = value1, column2 = value2....
WHERE [condition];
```

#### Example:

1. UPDATE SALESMAN SET CITY = 'PATAN' WHERE SNUM = 1002;

#### **1.7.3. DELETE STATEMENT**

The **DELETE** Query is us ed to del ete the existing r ecords from a t able. S yntax of Delete Statement as given below:

#### DELETE FROM <TABLE\_NAME> WHERE [condition];

#### Example:

1. DELETE FROM SALESMAN WHERE SNUM = 1002;

#### **1.7.4. SELECT STATEMENT**

SQL SELECT Statement is used to fetch record(s) from existing d atabase t able(s), which returns the result data in form of table. When we will display selected columns from the table then it is known as **Projection operations**.

#### Syntax:

SELECT [DISTINCT] column1, column2 ... FROM <FROM\_CLAUSE>

[WHERE <CONDITION>] [GROUP BY <EXPRESSION >] [HAVING <CONDITION>] [ORDER BY <COLUMN> [ASC|DESC] ]

#### Example:

1. Display all the information of salesman's in the sequence of City, Name and comm. SELECT CITY, SNAME, COMM FROM SALESMAN;

## 1.7.5. WHERE CALUSE IN SQL

WHERE c lause i n q uery r epresents t he c ondition f or f etching r ecords f rom t he table(s), known as **SELECTION** operation.

#### Example:

Display Num and Name of all customers with salesman number 1001.
 SELECT CNUM, CNAME, SNUM FROM CUSTOMER WHERE SNUM = 1001;

#### 1.7.6. ORDER BY CLAUSE

The SQL Order By Clause is us ed in SELECT statement to sort the dat a either in ascending or descending order, based on one or more columns. Oracle sorts query results in ascending order by default. If you want to sort the data in descending order, you must explicitly specify using DESC Keyword follow the column name.

#### Example

1. List all Salesmen with commission above 10% and result should be in ascending order of City and reverse order of commission.

SELECT SNUM, SNAME, CITY, COMM FROM SALESMAN WHERE COMM > 0.10 ORDER BY CITY, COMM DESC;

#### **1.7.7. GROUP BY CLAUSE**

The **SQL GROUP BY** clause establishes data groups based on columns and aggregates the information within a group only. The grouping criterion is defined by the columns specified in GROUP BY clause. GROUP BY clause can only be used with aggregate functions. The group by clause should contain all the columns in the select list expect those used along with the group functions.

#### Example

1. Display total orders for each salesman. SELECT SNUM, SUM (AMOUNT) FROM ORDERS GROUP BY SNUM;

## 1.7.8. HAVING CLAUSE

The H aving Clause ena bles y ou to s pecify c onditions t hat filter w hich gr oup r esults appear in the final results. HAVING clause places conditions on groups created by the GROUP BY clause. The HAVING clause must follow the GROUP BY clause in a query and must also precede the ORDER BY clause if used.

#### Example

 Display total orders of each salesman having more than single order.
 SELECT SNUM, COUNT (ONUM) FROM ORDERS GROUP BY SNUM HAVING COUNT(SNUM) > 1;

## **1.8 SQL OPERATORS**

An op erator i s a r eserved w ord us ed pr imarily i n S QL S tatement's t o per form operation(s). An operator manipulates individual data items and returns a result. The data items are called **operands or arguments**.

**A. Arithmetic Operator:** Arithmetic operators manipulate numeric operands. Below Tables shows the list of Arithmetic Operators.

Operator	Description
+	Addition
-	Subtraction
*	Multiplication
/	Division
**	Exponentiation

**B. Character Operator:** Character operators are used in expressions to manipulate character strings. Below Tables shows the list of Character Operators.

Operator	Description
	Concatenates character strings

**C. Comparison Operator:** Comparison operators are used in conditions that compare one value or expression with another. The result of a comparison can be TRUE or FALSE.

Operator	Description
=	Equality test.
!=, ^=, <>	Inequality test.
>	Greater than test.
<	Less than test.
>=	Greater than or equal to test.
<=	Less than or equal to test.
IN	"Equivalent to a ny m ember of" test. E quivalent to
	"= ANY".
ANY/ SOME	Compares a value to each value in a listor
	returned by a q uery. E valuates t o F ALSE if t he
	query returns no rows.
NOT IN	Equivalent to "!= ANY". Evaluates to FALSE if any
	member of the set is NULL.
ALL	Compares a v alue w ith ev ery v alue i n a l ist or

	returned by a query. Must be preceded by =, !=, >,
	<, < =, or > =. E valuates t o T RUE if t he quer y
	returns no rows.
EXISTS	TRUE if a sub-query returns at least one row.
IS [NOT] NULL	Tests f or nul ls. T his i s the onl y oper ator t hat
	should be used to test for nulls.

**D. Range Searching Operator:** In order to s elect d ata t hat i s w ithin a r ange o f values, the range searching operator is used.

Operator	Description
[Not]	[Not] greater t han or eq ual t o x and l ess t han or
BETWEEN x AND y	equal to <i>y</i> .

**E. Pattern Matching Operator:** Pattern m atching oper ator al lows c omparison of one string value with another string value, which is not identical. This is achieved by using wildcard characters.

Operator	Description
LIKE X	The c haracter " %" m atches a ny s tring of z ero or
	more c haracters ex cept nul I. T he c haracter " _"
	matches any single character.

F. Logical Operator: Logical operators manipulate the results of conditions.

Operator	Description
NOT	Returns TRUE if the following condition is FALSE.
	Returns FALSE if it is TRUE.
AND	Returns T RUE if bot h c omponent c onditions ar e
	TRUE. Returns FALSE if either is FALSE.
OR	Returns T RUE i f ei ther c omponent c ondition i s
	TRUE. Returns FALSE if both are FALSE.

**G. Set Operator:** Set o perators c ombine t he r esults of t wo qu eries into a s ingle result.

Operator	Description
UNION	Returns all distinct rows selected by either query.
UNION ALL	Returns all rows selected by either query, including all duplicates.
INTERSECT	Returns all distinct rows selected by both queries.
MINUS	Returns all distinct rows selected by the first query but not the second.

#### Example

- Display all customers not located in LONDON.
   SELECT \* FROM CUSTOMER WHERE CITY <> 'LONDON';
- 2. List all salesmen with commission between 11% and 15%. SELECT \* FROM SALESMAN WHERE COMM BETWEEN 0.11 AND 0.15;
- **3. List all salesmen whose names begin with letter 'B'.** SELECT \* FROM SALESMAN WHERE SNAME LIKE 'B%';

## **1.9 ORACLE SQL BUILT-IN FUNCTIONS**

**Oracle SQL Built-in Functions** serve the purpose of manipulating data items and returning a result. We can assign a value in form of variable or constants, such values are known as Arguments of functions. Oracle Functions can be divided into main two categories as described below:

## **1.9.1. GROUP FUNCTIONS (AGGREGATE FUNCTIONS)**

These functions group the rows of dat a bas ed on the values returned by the query. The group functions are us ed to calculate aggregate values, which return just one value after processing a group of rows.

Function	Value Returned
SUM (Values Column)	Returns Sum of given Values.
AVG (Values Column)	Return the Average Value.
COUNT (Values Column)	Return Number of r ows w here t he v alue of
	the column is not NULL
COUNT (*)	Return Number of rows including d uplicates
	and NULLs
MAX (Values Column)	Returns Maximum Value.
MIN (Values Column)	Returns Minimum Value.
MEDIAN (Values Column)	Returns Median (Middle) value in the sorted
	column, interpolating if necessary
STDDEV (Values  Column)	Returns S tandard d eviation o f t he c olumn
	ignoring NULL values
VARIANCE (Values Column)	Returns Variance of the column ignoring
	NULL values
CORR (Column-1,Column-2)	Returns C orrelation c oefficient be tween t he
	two columns after eliminating nulls.

#### Example

1. Count the no. of salesmen currently having orders.

SELECT COUNT(DISTINCT (SNUM)) FROM ORDERS;

## **1.9.2. SINGLE ROW FUNCTIONS (SCALAR FUNCTION)**

Single r ow or S calar f unctions r eturn a v alue f or ev ery r ow t hat i s processed in a query. There are four types of single row functions.

**A. Numeric Functions:** These are functions t hat accept num eric i nput and r eturn numeric values.

Function	Value Returned
ABS ( m )	Absolute value of m
MOD(m,n)	Remainder of m divided by n
POWER (m, n)	m raised to the nth power
ROUND (m,n)	m rounded to the nth decimal place
TRUNC (m, n)	m truncated to the nth decimal place
CEIL(n)	smallest integer greater than or equal to n
FLOOR (n)	greatest integer smaller than or equal to n
SQRT ( n )	positive square root of n
EXP(n)	e raised to the power n
LN(n)	natural logarithm of n
LOG ( n2, n1 )	logarithm of n1, base n2
SIN ( n )	sine (n)
COS(n)	cosine (n)
TAN(n)	tan (n)

**B. String Functions:** These are functions that accept character input and can return both character and number values.

Function	Value Returned
LOWER (s)	All letters are changed to lowercase.
UPPER (s)	All letters are changed to uppercase.
INITCAP (s)	First letter of each word is changed to uppercase and all other letters are in lower case.

CONCAT (s1, s2)	Concatenation of s1 and s2. Equivalent to s1    s2	
LPAD (s1, n , s2)	Returns s 1 right justified and p added I eft with n characters from s2; s2 defaults to space.	
RPAD (s1, n, s2)	Returns s 1 left justified a nd p added right with n characters from s2; s2 defaults to space.	
LTRIM (s,set)	Returns s with characters removed up to the first character not in set; defaults to space	
RTRIM (s, set)	Returns s with final characters removed after the last character not in set; defaults to space	
REPLACE ( s, s earch_s, replace_s )	Returns s with every occurrence of search_s in s replaced by replace_s; default removes search_s	
SUBSTR (s, m, n)	Returns a substring from s, beginning in position m and n c haracters long; de fault returns to e nd of s.	
LENGTH (s)	Returns the number of characters in s.	
INSTR ( s1, s2, m, n)	Returns the position of the nth oc currence of s2 in s 1, b eginning at p osition m , bot h m an d n default to 1.	

**C. Date Functions:** These are functions that take values that are of datatype DATE as input and return values of datatype DATE.

Function	Value Returned
SYSDATE	Current date
LAST DAY (Date)	Date of the last day of the
	month containing date
NEXT DAY (Date day)	Date of the first day of the week
	after date
ADD_MONTHS (Date, No. of Month)	Add No. of Months in Date

MONTHS RETWEEN (Data 1 Data 2)	Returns D ifference in Month
MONTHS_DETWEEN (Dale-1, Dale-2)	between two dates.
GREATEST (Date-1, Date-2,, Date-N)	Latest of the given dates
LEAST (Date-1, Date-2,, Date-N)	Earliest of the given dates
NEW_TIME	Display D ate an d T ime i n N ew
(Date,Current_Timezone,New_TimeZone)	TimeZone Format

**D. Conversion Functions:** These are functions that help us to convert a value in one form to another form.

Function	Value Returned
TO NUMBER (String Format)	Character S tring c onverted t o a N umber
······································	as Specified by Format.
TO CHAR(Value Format)	Convert Number or D ate i nto C haracter
	string as specified by Format.
TO_DATE (String, Format)	String Value c onverted i n a D ate as
	specified by given Format.
ROUND (Date, Format)	Date Rounded as specified by the Format.
TRUNC (Date Format)	Date t runcated as S pecified by t he
	Format.

## 1.10 SQL Joins

Sometimes it is required to retrieve information from multiple tables; at that time Join condition is required. Rows in on et able can be joined to rows in another table according to common values existing in corresponding columns. We must have to keep in mind some principle as follows:

• When W riting a S ELECT s tatement t hat joins t ables, pr ecede t he c olumn name with the table name for clarify and to enhance the database access.

- If the same column name appears in more than one table, the column name must be prefixed with the table name.
- To join *N* tables together, you need a minimum of N-1 join conditions.

## 1.10.1. TYPES OF ORACLE JOINS

- Inner Join
- Outer Join
- Self Join

#### A. INNER Join (Equi Join OR Simple Join)

It is a simple S QL join c ondition which uses the equal sign as the c omparison operator. The query compares each row of table1 with each row of table2 to find all pairs of rows which satisfy the join-predicate.



Figure-9.2 Inner Join Diagram

The SQL INNER JOIN would return the records where table1 and table2 intersect.

#### B. Outer Join

An Outer Join is used to identify situations where rows in one table do not match rows in a second table, ev en though the two tables are related. The SQL outer join operator in Oracle is (+) and is used on one side of the join condition only.

There are two types of outer joins:

• LEFT OUTER JOIN
• RIGHT OUTER JOIN

# I. LEFT OUTER JOIN

A LE FT O UTER J O IN ad ds bac k al I t he r ows t hat ar e dr opped f rom t he first (left) table in the join condition, and output columns from the second (right) table are set to NULL.



Figure-9.3 Left Outer Join Diagram

The SQL LEFT OUTER JOIN would return the all records from *table1* and only those records from *table2* that intersect with *table1*.

# II. RIGHT OUTER JOIN

A R IGHT O UTER J O IN adds back a ll the rows that are dropped from the second (right) table in the join condition, and output columns from the first (left) table are set to NULL.



Figure-9.4 Right Outer Join Diagram

The SQL R IGHT O UTER JOIN would return the all records from *table2* and on ly those records from *table1* that intersect with *table2*.

#### C. Self Join

Sometimes you need to join a table to itself only. When a table is joined to itself, the join is known as Self Join. It is necessary to ensure that the join statement defines as alias for both copies of the table to avoid column ambiguity.

#### Example

1. Show the name of all customers with their relational salesman's name. SELECT C UST.CNAME, S MAN.SNAME F ROM C USTOMER C UST, S ALESMAN SMAN WHERE SMAN.SNUM = CUST.SNUM;

2. Find all pairs of customers having the same city without duplication. SELECT C U.CNAME, C U.CITY, C UST.CNAME, C UST.CITY FR OM C USTOMER CU, CUSTOMER CUST WHERE CU.CITY = CUST.CITY AND CU.CNUM > CUST.CNUM;

# **1.11 SUB QUERIES**

A query within another query is known as Sub query or Inner Query or Nested query. It is embedded within the W HERE clause. Sub queries must be enclosed within parentheses. A sub query is used to return data that will be used in the main query as a condition to further restrict the data to be retrieved. Sub queries can be us ed with the SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE statements along with the operators. There are a few rules that sub queries must follow:

• A s ub qu ery c an have only one c olumn in the SELECT clause, unless multiple columns are in the main query for the sub query to compare its selected columns.

- An ORDER BY cannot be used in a sub query, although the main query can use an ORDER BY. The GROUP BY can be used to perform the same function as the ORDER BY in a sub query.
- Sub queries that return more than one row can only be used with multiple value operators, such as the IN operator.
- The B ETWEEN operator c annot be us ed w ith a s ub q uery; how ever, t he BETWEEN operator can be used within the sub query.

#### Example

1. Following e xample up dates S ALARY by 0. 25 times in C USTOMERS table for all the customers whose AGE is greater than or equal to 27:

UPDATE CUSTOMERS SET SALARY = SALARY \* 0.25 WHERE AGE IN (SELECT AGE FROM CUSTOMERS\_BKP WHERE AGE >= 27 );

# 1.12 SQL VIEWS

A view is nothing more than a SQL statement that is stored in the database with an associated nam e. A view is ac tually a c omposition of a t able in the form of a predefined SQL query. A view can contain all rows of a table or select rows from a table. A view can be c reated from one or many tables which d epend on the written SQL query to create a view.

Views, which are kind of virtual tables, allow users to do the following:

- Structure data in a way that users or classes of users find natural or intuitive.
- Restrict ac cess t o t he dat a s uch t hat a us er c an s ee a nd (sometimes) m odify exactly what they need and no more.
- Summarize data from various tables which can be used to generate reports.

Database views ar e c reated us ing t he **CREATE VIEW** statement. Views c an be created from a single table, multiple tables, or another view.

# CREATE VIEW <VIEW NAME> AS SELECT COLUMN1, COLUMN2..... FROM <TABLE NAME> WHERE [CONDITION];

Obviously, where you have a view, you need a way to drop the view if it is no longer needed. The syntax is very simple as given below:

#### DROP VIEW < VIEW NAME>;

# 1.13 SQL INDEXES

Indexes are special lookup tables that the database search engine can use to speed up data retrieval. An index helps speed up SELECT queries and WHERE clauses, but it slows down data input, with UPDATE and INSERT statements.

Creating an index involves the CREATE INDEX statement, which allows you to name the index, to specify the table and which column or columns to index, and to indicate whether the index is in ascending or descending order.

Indexes can also be unique, in that the index prevents duplicate entries in the column or combination of columns on which there's an index.

#### Syntax:

#### CREATE INDEX <INDEX\_NAME> ON <TABLE\_NAME>;

There are three types of index as follows:

• Single-Column Indexes: A single-column index is one that is created based on only one table column.

- Unique Indexes: Unique indexes are used not only for performance, but also for data integrity. A unique index does not allow any duplicate values to be inserted into the table.
- **Composite Indexes:** A composite index is an index on two or more columns of a table.

An index c an be dr opped us ing SQL **DROP** command. C are should be t aken when dropping an index because performance may be slowed or improved.

# Syntax:

DROP INDEX <INDEX\_NAME>;

# 1.14 SQL SEQUENCE

Sequence is an or acle object which is us ed to generate un ique integers, which can help t o generate pr imary k eys au tomatically. A new primary k ey value c an be obtained by selecting the most produced value and incrementing it. It required a lock during the transaction and causes other users to wait for next value of primary key it is k nown as **serialization**. T o c reate a s equence us ers m ust obt ain C REATE SEQUENCE system privileges.

#### Syntax:

CREATE SEQUENCE <SEQUENCE\_NAME> STARTWITH INITIAL-VALUE INCREMENT BY INCREMENT-VALUE MAXVALUE MAXIMUM-VALUE CYCLE |NOCYCLE CACHE | NOCACHE;

Where,

**START WITH:** Specifies the starting value for the Sequence.

**INCREMENT BY:** Specifies the value by which sequence will be incremented.

**MAXVALUE:** specifies the up per limit or the maximum value up t o which s equence will increment itself.

**CYCLE:** Specifies t hat if t he m aximum v alue e xceeds t he s et limit, s equence w ill restart its cycle from the beginning.

**CACHE:** Pre-allocates a set of sequence number and keep them into memory so the sequence number can be accessed faster.

#### Example

1. Let's start by creating a sequence, which will start from 1001, increment by 1 with a maximum value of 9999.

CREATE SEQUENCE ST\_SEQ STARTWITH1001 INCREMENT BY1 MAXVALUE 9999 CYCLE;

To insert Sequence Value in SNUM of Salesman table, query will be INSERTINTO SALESMAN VALUE (ST\_SEQ.nextval, 'AMIT', 'PATAN', 0.15);

# > Check Your Progress

15. Explain difference between varchar2 & nvarchar2 data types.

.....

16. Explain difference between TRUNCATE and DROP Table.

.....

.....

17. What is Primary Key? Describe composite Primary Key with Example.

.....

.....

18. What is Operator in SQL? List the different operators used in SQL.

19. Define Aggregate and Scalar Function?

20. What is Views in SQL?

# 1.15 LET US SUM UP

In t his c hapter, w e ha ve di scussed about S QL A rchitecture a nd di fferent S QL Statements. W e hav e al so e xplored data t ypes available i n S QL. W e hav e c ome t o know vital processes like Selection, Projection Grouping, Joins and Sub Queries. We have also described different operators and functions available in SQL. We have tried to e xplore different c onstraints. W e h ave des cribed s ome S QL O bjects l ike View, Indexes, and Sequences etc.

# 1.16CHECK YOUR PROGRESS: POSSIBLE ANSWERS

- Varchar2 r epresents variable I ength c haracter data u p t o 4 000 c haracters. While n varchar2 r epresents Unicode c haracter s tring ha ving m aximum s ize determined by the National Character Set with an upper limit of 4000 Bytes.
- TRUNCATE clause is used to delete all records from existing tables. Definition of t able r emains as it is. W hile D ROP r emoves en tire de finition of table means delete all records including the table structure.
- 3. Primary K ey is us ed t o u niquely identify e ach r ecord i n a d atabase t able. When Primary key is created on multiple fields of the table than it is known as Composite Primary Key. Composite Primary Key created at table level. Example:

# CREATE TABLE Employee

(

PRIMARY KEY (EmployeeId,BranchCode)		
EmployeeJoinDate	DATE,	
EmployeeCity	VARCHAR2(30),	
EmployeeNAME	VARCHAR2(30) NOT NULL,	
BranchCode	NUMBER (4),	
Employeeld	NUMBER (4),	

);

Above Q uery is us ed to C reate E mployee T able with C omposite P rimary K ey namely (EmployeeId,BranchCode).

- 4. An operator is used to perform different operation and return result set. In SQL operators have different types as follows:
  - A. Arithmetic Operators
  - B. Character Operators
  - C. Comparison Operators
  - D. Range Searching Operator
  - E. Pattern Matching Operator
  - F. Logical Operator
  - G. Set Operator

At the end of this unit,

- Students will be able to write simple procedure and execute it
- Students will write stored procedure for various operations to be applied on database table
- Students will be able to simple function and call it

# **2.2 INTRODUCTION**

A procedure or f unction is a nam ed o bject of P L/SQL b lock. T here are t wo t ypes of subprograms in P L/SQL nam ely P rocedures and F unctions. E very s ubprogram w ill contain dec laration block, an execution block or body, and an exception handling block being an optional part.

When us er ex ecutes a procedure or function, the execution takes place at the server side. T his o bviously r educes net work t raffic. T he s ubprograms are t he c ompiled programs and stored in the or acle database and c an b e invoked whenever required. Whenever the sub programs are called, they only need to execute because they are stored in compiled form. So, they save time required for compilation of the sub program.

# 2.3 STORED PROCEDURE BASICS

A procedure may take on e or more arguments. If a procedure takes arguments then these arguments are to be s upplied at the time of calling the procedure. A procedure contains two p arts s pecification a nd the bo dy. P rocedure specification be gins with Create and ends with procedure name or parameters list. Procedures without parameters are written without a parenthesis. The body of the procedure starts after the keyword IS or AS and ends with keyword End.

# Syntax:

CREATE [OR REPLACE] PROCEDURE [schema.] procedure\_name [( parameter\_1 [IN] [OUT] parameter\_data\_type\_1, parameter\_2 [IN] [OUT] parameter\_data\_type\_2,... parameter\_N [IN] [OUT] parameter\_data\_type\_N )] [AUTHID DEFINER | CURRENT\_USER] IS — declaration\_statements BEGIN — executable\_statements return {return\_data\_type}; [EXCEPTION — the exception-handling statements] END [procedure\_name];

#### Where,

Create or Replace means the procedure is created if the procedure with the same name doesn't exist or the existing procedure is replaced with the new code.

**IS** represents the beginning of the body of the procedure and is similar to D eclare in anonymous PL/SQL Blocks. The code between IS and BEGIN makes the D eclaration section.

The syntax within the brackets [] indicate optional fields. The optional parameter list will contain n ame, m ode and t ypes of the p arameters. IN r epresents the v alue t hat will be passed from ou tside and O UT r epresents the parameter t hat will be us ed to r eturn a value outside of the procedure.

EXCEPTION is again an optional part. It is used to handle run-time errors.

# 2.3.1 COMPONENTS OF PROCEDURE

To understand procedure easily we will divide the Procedure in two parts:

#### I. Procedure Head

All the code before the "IS" keyword is called the Procedure head or signature. Various parts of PL/SQL Procedure Head are:

# A. Schema

This is an optional parameter and defines the schema name in which the procedure will be created. The default schema is the current user. If we specify a different user then, the other user must have the privileges to create a procedure in his/her schema.

#### B. Name

The NAME parameter defines the name of the procedure. The name of a procedure should be more meaningful and readable.

#### C. Parameters

The parameters are optional. These will be required to pass and receive values from a PLSQL procedure. There are 3 styles of passing parameters.

- **IN:** This is the default style of parameter in PLSQL procedure. We use the IN mode whenever we want the parameter to be read only i.e. we cannot change the value of the parameter in the PLSQL procedure.
- **OUT**: The OUT parameter returns the values to the calling subprogram or subroutines. A default value cannot be assigned to OUT parameter so we cannot make it o ptional. We have to as sign a value to OUT parameter b efore we exit the procedure or the value of the OUT parameter will be NULL. While calling a procedure with OUT parameters, we have to make sure that we pass variables for the corresponding OUT parameters.
- IN OUT: In this mode the actual parameter is passed to the PLSQL procedure with initial values and then within the PLSQL procedure the value of the parameter may get changed or reassigned. The IN OUT parameter is finally returned to the calling subroutine.

# D. Authid

This is also an opt ional par ameter and it d efines whether the procedure will execute with the privileges of the C reator / D efiner of the procedure or with that of the Current\_User privileges.

# II. Procedure's Body

Everything after the "IS" keyword is called the body of the procedure. The procedure's body c ontains t he d eclaration of v ariables in t he d eclaration s ection, t he c ode t o be executed in the executable statements part and the code to handle any exception in the exception handling part.

The d eclaration and e xception handling p arts are optional in PLSQL procedure body. We must have at least one executable statement in the executable statement part. The execution p art i s t he on e w here w e ha ve t o w rite t he b usiness I ogic. T he R eturn statement in procedure is us ed to discontinue the execution of the procedure further and return the control to the calling subroutine.

To create a stored procedure, user must have Create Procedure system privilege. User must al so hav e r equired ob ject pr ivileges on t he ob jects t hat are r eferred in t he procedure in order to successfully compile the procedure.

# 2.3.2 TYPES OF PARAMETERS

There are two types of parameters of a procedure.

- 1. Formal parameters
- 2. Actual Parameters
- > Formal Parameters

The parameters declared in the definition of procedure are known as formal parameters.

They receive the values sent while calling the procedure. For example,

• procedure Welcome (message varchar2, name varchar2)

In the above code message, name parameters are called as formal parameters.

#### Actual Parameters

The values given within p arentheses while calling the procedure are called as actual parameters.

• Welcome ('Welcome Mr.', 'Himanshu');

'Welcome Mr.' and 'Himanshu' ar e actual parameters. These values are copied to the corresponding formal parameters message and name.

# 2.4 CREATING STORED PROCEDURES

After di scussing t he di fferent par t of t he procedure, i ts t ime t o c reate procedure. Suppose we have a table named 'employee' as shown below:

Create table employee

(Employee\_id number(5),

Employee\_name varchar2(10),

Employee\_salary number(6,2),

Employee\_department varchar2(10), Employee commission number(8,2));

After creating 'employee' table insert few records in it.

Now, we will create a P rocedure in which we will pass the 'employee\_id' and 'salary'. The P rocedure will u pdate the record of the employee having the same 'employee\_id' using Oracle SQL Update statement.

# Example:

```
Create or R eplace P rocedure up date_employee_salary (emp_id_in IN N umber,
salary_in IN Number)
IS
Begin
Update employee
Set employee_salary = salary_in
Where employee_id = emp_id_in;
dbms_output.put_line('Procedure executed successfully');
End update_employee_salary;
/
```

In t he ab ove c ode, w e hav e c reated a pr ocedure nam ed 'update\_employee\_salary' which will t ake t wo p arameters 'employee\_id' and 'salary' a nd up date t he 'employee' table.

# > Calling PL/SQL Procedure

After c reating procedure, it c an be c alled us ing t he E XEC or E XECUTE S tatement. Syntax to call a Procedure using EXEC or EXECUTE statement is:

# Syntax:

```
EXEC procedure_name(parameters);
or
EXECUTE procedure_name(parameters);
```

Suppose, we want to update the salary of 'employee\_id = 101' from 1000 to 1500 using update\_employee\_salary procedure. So, call update\_employee\_salary procedure using EXEC statement as shown below.

• Exec update\_employee\_salary(101,1500);

The procedure will successfully update the salary of employee having id '101' from 1000 to 1500 using PL/SQL Procedure.

# > IN Parameter

Here we will create a s tored procedure to accept a s ingle p arameter and pr int out the message with parameter passed via DBMS\_OUTPUT.

# Example:

Create or Replace Procedure INParameter(var in varchar2) IS Begin dbms\_output.put\_line('Welcome: The argument passed is: ' || var); End;

To Run the procedure pass following command with argument as stated in below:

• Exec INParameter('BAOU');

# Output:

• Welcome: The argument passed is: BAOU

# > OUT Parameter

A stored procedure to demonstrate the OUT Parameter.

```
Create or Replace Procedure OUTParameter(outvar out varchar2)
IS
Begin
outvar:= 'Welcome to Hindustan';
End;
/
```

Now execute the above procedure. It will create the procedure.

Now to e xecute t he procedure w e w ill w rite a f ollowing block of c ode and c all t he Procedure from the body of the block.

#### Example:

Declare	
	outvar varchar2(100);
Begin	
	outparameter(outvar);
	dbms_output.put_line(outvar);
End;	
/	

The executed code is shown below.

# Output:

• Welcome to Hindustan

# > INOUT Parameter

As tored procedure to ac cept a INOUT p arameter (Param), c onstruct the output message and assign back to the same parameter name(Param) again.

Example:

```
Create or replace procedure inoutparameter(param IN OUT varchar2)
IS
Begin
param := 'Welcome to India ' || param;
End;
```

The executed code will create the procedure.

To e xecute t he pr ocedure w e w ill c reate a following block of c ode a nd c all t he Procedure from the body of the block.

	Decla	re
		param varchar2(100) := 'veddesai';
	Begin	
		inoutparameter(param);
		dbms_output.put_line(param);
	End;	
1		

The above code produces following output.

# Output:

• Welcome to India veddesai

# 2.4.1 STORED PROCEDURE WITH DML STATEMENTS

# I. INSERT Statement

First of all we will create User\_data table in Oracle database as shown below.

```
Create Table User_data(
User_id number (5) not null, username varchar2 (20) not null,
created_by varchar2 (20) not null, created_date date not null,
primary key (user_id) );
```

Once the table is created, we will create a stored procedure. The procedure will accept 4 IN parameters and insert it into table "User\_data".

Create OR Replace Procedure insertUSERDATA(		
userid IN USER_data.USER_ID%TYPE,		
username IN USER_data.USERNAME%TYPE,		
createdby IN USER_data.CREATED_BY%TYPE,		
pdate IN USER_data.CREATED_DATE%TYPE)		
IS		
Begin		

```
Insert INTO U SER_data ( "User_Id", " Username", " Created_By",
"Created_Date")
Values (userid, username,createdby,pdate);
Commit;
End;
```

Once the procedure insertUSERdata created, we will execute it from PL/SQL block as shown below.

#### Example:

insertUSERdata(201,'Het','scott',SYSDATE);

End;

1

Begin

Execute the above PL/SQL block and check the table records.

#### II. UPDATE Statement

We will continue with the previously created us er\_data table. We will create a s tored procedure which will accept 2 IN parameters and update the username field based on the provided userId.

/

Once the procedure updateUSERdata created, we will execute it from PL/SQL block as shown below.

Example:

```
Begin
updateUSERdata(201,'Mansi');
End;
/
```

Execute the above PL/SQL block and check the table records.

# III. DELETE Statement

We will continue with the previously created us er\_data table. We will create a s tored procedure which will delete the record based on the provided userId.

# Example:

```
Create or Replace P rocedure de leteUSER data(userid IN
USER_data.USER_ID%TYPE)
IS
Begin
Delete USER_data where USER_ID = userid;
Commit;
End;
/
```

Once the procedure deleteUSERdata created, we will execute it from PL/SQL block as shown below.

Example:

Begin deleteUSERdata(201); End; 1

Execute the above PL/SQL block and check the table records.

# 2.4.2 DELETING A STORED PROCEDURE

To delete a stored procedure we have to fire following command.

# Example:

Drop procedure updateUSERdata; •

Above code deletes the procedure updateUSER data.

# **2.5 FUNCTION BASICS**

A stored function is same as a procedure, except that it returns a value. Create Function command is used to create a stored function.

Syntax: Create [OR Replace] Function function name [(parameter\_1 [IN] [OUT] parameter\_data\_type\_1, parameter\_2 [IN] [OUT] parameter\_data\_type\_2,... parameter N [IN] [OUT] parameter data type N ]] **RETURN** return datatype IS | AS - declaration statements BEGIN - executable statements return {return data type}; **[EXCEPTION** - the exception-handling statements] END [function name];

Where,

1. The function name is the name given to the PLSQL function.

2. T he parameter\_name is t he nam e of t he par ameter t hat w e ar e p assing t o t he function.

3. The parameter\_data\_type is the datatype of the parameter that we are passing to the PLSQL function.

4. E very O racle P L/SQL function must have a R eturn statement in the code e xecution part.

The RETURN s pecified in the he ader p art of the or acle PL/SQL function s pecifies the data-type of the value returned by the function.

# 2.5.1 PARAMETER PASSING TO A FUNCTION

There are 3 ways of passing parameters to PLSQL Function:

a. IN

b. OUT and

c. IN O UT

- **IN:** This is the default style of parameter in PLSQL function. This provides same functionality as of Stored Procedure.
- **OUT:** The O UT par ameter r eturns t he values t o t he c alling s ubprogram or subroutines. This provides same functionality as of Stored Procedure.
- **IN OUT:** In this mode the actual parameter is passed to the PL/SQL function with initial values and then within the PL/SQL function the value of the parameter may get c hanged or r eassigned. T he I N O UT par ameter is f inally r eturned t o t he calling subroutine. This provides same functionality as of Stored Procedure.

The block structure of a P L/SQL function is same as those of a PL/SQL Anonymous Block. A nonymous B lock does n't have C reate or R eplace F unction, the par ameters section of code and the Return Clause.

To und erstand f unctions w e w ill us e t he pr eviously c reated t able nam ed ' employee'. Now s uppose w e w ant t o c reate a f unction t hat s hows us the n ame of a n em ployee whenever we pass employee\_id as parameter.

# Example:

Create or Replace Function get\_employee\_name (emp\_no IN number)

RETURN varchar2 IS emp\_name varchar2(100); Begin Select employee\_name into emp\_name From employee Where employee\_id = emp\_no; Return emp\_name; End get\_employee\_name; /

Once the get \_employee\_name function c reated, w e will execute it from PL/SQL b lock as shown below.

# Calling Function

We can call an Oracle PL/SQL Function two ways.

# I. Using Oracle SQL SELECT statement

We can call the above PL/SQL function using an SQL SELECT statement shown below and check the output.

• Select get\_employee\_name (101) from dual;

Now, suppose if we change the employee\_id passed to the function then we will get the name of another employee.

# II. Using Oracle Anonymous Block

Second way to call function is to create an Anonymous block. Here we will create an anonymous block to call the get\_employee\_name PLSQL function.

# Example:

Declare

First\_Name varchar2(30);

```
Second_Name varchar2(30);
```

Third\_Name varchar2(30);

# Begin

```
First_Name := get_employee_name(101);
Second_Name := get_employee_name(102);
Third_Name := get_employee_name(103);
```

dbms\_output.put\_line(First\_Name); dbms\_output.put\_line(Second\_Name);

dbms\_output.put\_line(Third\_Name);

End;

When we execute the above Oracle SQL Anonymous Block we will get three names as the output.

# 2.5.2 DELETING FUNCTION

To delete a function we have to use drop function command.

# Syntax:

• Drop function <function-name>;

# Example:

• Drop function get\_employee\_name;

Above code has deleted the function get\_employee\_name.

# Check Your Progress

1) What is procedure and function in PLSQL?

.....

.....

2) Where the Pre\_defined\_functions are stored?

3) Write the code for calling functions and procedures in a PLSQL block.

4) Write any five inbuilt String function.
5) State the similarities between Procedure and Function.
6) Differentiate between Procedure and Function.

# 2.6LET US SUM UP

In this chapter, we have I earned P L/SQL subprograms. We have I earned to create Procedure and different ways of calling it. We have a loo discussed to create F unction and ways of calling it. We also learnt parameter p assing an dreturning values from subprograms. In PLSQL stored procedure and function plays a very important role for passing and manipulating data records very efficiently and effectively.

# 2.7CHECK YOUR PROGRESS: POSSIBLE ANSWERS

1. A Procedure is a subprogram block consists of a group of PL/SQL statements while function is an independent PL/SQL subprogram.

 Pre\_defined\_functions are s tored i n t he s tandard package c alled "Functions, Procedures

and Packages".

3. Function is called as a part of an expression:

Example: squr:=count\_sqr('10');

Procedure is called as a statement in PL/SQL:

Example: count\_salary('201');

4. Following are the five inbuilt String function:

**I.**INSTR(maintext, string, start, occurance): It gives the position of particular text in the given string.

Where,

maintext is main string,

string is text that need to be searched,

start indicates starting position of the search (optional),

accordance indicates the occurrence of the searched string (optional).

Example:

Select INSTR('Gujarat,'a',2,1) from dual;

Output: 4

**II.** UPPER (string): It returns the uppercase of the provided string.

Example:Select upper('baou') from dual;

Output: BAOU

**III.** LOWER (string): It returns the lowercase of the provided string.

Example:Select upper('BAOU') from dual;

Output: baou

**IV.** INITCAP (string): It returns the given string with the starting letter in upper case.

Example:Select ('gujarat vidyapith') from dual;

Output: Gujarat Vidyapith

V. LENGTH (text) Returns the length of the given string.

Example:Select LENGTH ('BAOU') from dual;

Output: 4

5. Both can be called from other PL/SQL blocks.

If the exception raised in the subprogram is not handled in the subprogram exception handling section, then it will propagate to the calling block.

Both can have as many parameters as required.

Both are treated as database objects in PL/SQL.

6. Following table shows the difference between Procedure and Function:

Procedure	Function	
It is used to a execute certain process	It is used mainly to a execute certain	
	calculations	
It can't be called in Select statement	A Function without DML statements can	
	be called in Select statement	
It uses Out parameter to return the value	It uses Return to return the value	
It is not mandatory to return the value	It is mandatory to return the value from	
from procedure	function	
Return will exit the control from	Return will exit the control from	
subprogram.	subprogram al ong w ith r eturning t he	
	value	
Return d atatype is n ot r equired t o be	Return da tatype is mandatory to specify	
specified at the time of procedure	at the time of function creation	
creation		

# 2.8 ASSIGNMENTS

1. Define stored Procedure. Explain the characteristics of stored Procedure.

2. Define function. Explain the characteristics of functions.

3. Explain various Parameters of PLSQL subprograms.

4. C reate a pr ocedure t hat t akes t he pnum, p name as i nput and insert it t o t he 'tblPerson' table of the database.

5. Create a function that takes the number as input and returns the cube as output.

# 2.9 Further Reading

- 1. Advanced PL/SQL Programming: The Definitive Reference by Boobal Ganesan
- 2. SQL/PLSQL, The ProgrammingLanguage of ORACLE, BPBPublication by Ivan.
- 3. Introduction to Database Systems, 4th Edition, C. J. Date, Narose Publishing.

# Unit 3:Package and Trigger 3

# **Unit Structure**

- 3.1. Learning Objectives & Outcomes
- 3.2. Introduction
- Package Component 3.3.
- 3.4. Package Implementation
- Trigger 3.5.
- 3.6. Levels of Trigger
- 3.7. User
- Let Us Sum Up 3.8.
- 3.9. Check your progress: Possible Answers
- 3.10. Assignments
- 3.11. Further Reading

# 3.1 LEARNING OBJECTIVES & OUTCOMES

The objective of this unit is to make the students,

- To learn and understand trigger and Package concepts
- To define, declare and initialize trigger on various kind of events
- To learn and initialize package and use it
- To learn the concept of Users and their roles

# Outcome:

At the end of this unit,

• S tudents will b e able t o d eclare, i nitialize an d write trigger bas ed o n various kinds of events

- Students will be able to define package and access that package
- Students will be able to create and remove user, grant and revoke privileges

# **3.2 INTRODUCTION**

A Package is collection of objects. It contains procedures, functions, variables and SQL statements c reated as a s ingle un it. A package c onsists of t wo par ts, P ackage Specification or package header and Package Body.

Package S pecification w orks as a n i nterface t o t he package. D eclaration of t ypes, variables, constants, exceptions, cursors and subprograms is made in Package specifications. P ackage s pecification does not allow any c ode s tatements. P ackage body is the platform to provide implementation for the subprograms.

Package delivers various Advantages like,

- It a llows us er t o gr oup t ogether r elated ob jects, t ypes and s ubprograms as a PL/SQL module.
- If package contains a procedure and when a procedure is called first time, entire package is loaded. This is expensive with respect to resources. But it takes less response time for queries for subsequent calls.
- Package a llows us to create types, v ariable a nd s ubprograms that are private or public

Items declared within package body are known as private. They are only accessed within the package. While items declared within package specification is public and available outside the package.

# 3.3 PACKAGE COMPONENT

Package component consists of two parts.

# 3.3.1 PACKAGE SPECIFICATION

The syntax for the package specification is as follows.

# Syntax:

CREATE [OR REPLACE] PACKAGE package_name
[AUTHID { CURRENT_USER   DEFINER } ]
{ IS   AS }
[Definitions of public TYPES
,Declarations of public variables, types, and objects
,Declarations of Exceptions
,Pragmas
,Declarations of Cursors, Procedures, and Functions
,Headers of Procedures and Functions]
END [package_name];

# 3.3.2 PACKAGE BODY

The syntax for the package body is as follows:

# Syntax:

CREATE [OR REPLACE] PACKAGE BODY package\_name

 $\{ |S| | AS \}$ 

[Definitions of private TYPEs

,Declarations of private variables, types, and objects

,full definitions of Cursors

,full definitions of Procedures and Functions]

[BEGIN sequence\_of\_statements [EXCEPTION Exception\_handlers]] END [package\_name];

Package body is not required if the package specification contains only types, constants, variables, exceptions. This type of packages on ly contains g lobal variables that will be used by subprograms or cursors.

# 3.4 Package Implementation

Now we will discuss the implementation of package. First of all, we will start with simple example as follows:

**Example 1:** In the below code, first we are creating a package specification with two stored procedure one to find the maximum number and another to find the cube of the given number.

Package Specification:

```
Create or Replace Package PackageTest as
procedure findMaximum(num1 IN number, num2 IN number);
procedure findCube (num IN number);
end PackageTest;
```

Once w e ex ecute a bove c ode i t w ill c reate a pac kage s pecification n amed 'PackageTest' (the body is not created yet).

#### Package Body:

Now consider the following code:

Create or Replace Package body PackageTest as

When we execute the above code it will create the package body for the previously created package specification. All the members in the package body must match with all the declarations within the package specification. We have to make sure that both package specification and package body gets stored in the database.

To execute package we have to use the command 'execute' followed by the "packagename.sub-programname". To e xecute the a bove c reated p ackage from SQL prompt the following command will be used.

- Execute PackageTest.findcube(15);
- Execute PackageTest.findMaximum(15,25);

Both of the above execution will return the respective output.

# Example 2:

Now we will create a package to interact with a database. Before creating a package we will create tables n amed E mployee and D epartment to b e ac cessed in p ackage as shown below.

- Create t able em ployee(eno n umber(3) pr imary k ey, ename varchar2(15), salary number(7,2), deptno number(3) references department);
- Create table department(deptno number(3) primary key, deptname varchar2(15));

After creating both the tables insert few records in both the tables.

After inserting records into the tables we will create package to access both the tables in it.

# Package Specification:

Create or Replace Package PackageDBAccess as procedure dispEmprecord; procedure dispDeptrecord; end PackageDBAccess; /

# Package Body:

Create or Replace Package body PackageDBAccess AS
Procedure dispEmprecord as
Cursor cursor_emprec is
select ename, salary from employee;
Begin
dbms_output.put_line ('Name'    ' ' '    'Salary');
for record_emp in cursor_emprec
loop
dbms_output.put_line (record_emp.ename    ' '
record_emp.salary);
end loop;
End;
Procedure dispDeptrecord as
Cursor cursor_deptrec is
select deptno, deptname from department;

Begir	1			
db	ms_output.p	ut_line ('DeptNo'    '	'    'DeptName');	,
for		record_dept	in	cursor_deptrec
loc	p			
	dbms_out	put.put_line (record	_dept.deptno    ' '	I
	record_d	ept.deptname);		
en	d			loop;
End;				
End Package	)BAccess;			
/				

Above block of code will successfully create a package body.

# Package Execution

To execute each of these procedures separately, we can use the following command as shown below.

- Execute PackageDBAccess. dispemprecord;
- Execute PackageDBAccess. dispdeptrecord;

When we execute both the above statements it will display both table records.

# 3.4.1 ALTERING PACKAGE

Sometime we need to modify the package code. So, after updating the code we have to just recompile the package body.

Package Alter Syntax is:

• Alter Package <package\_name> Compile Body;

# **3.4.2 DELETING PACKAGE**

To delete the package we have to use package Drop command.

Package Drop Syntax is:

• Drop Package <package\_name>;

# **3.5 TRIGGERS**

A database trigger is a stored procedure associated with a dat abase table, view or event. The trigger c an be i nvoked once, when some event occurs. It may occur many times, once for each row affected by an Insert, Update or Delete statement. The trigger can be invoked before the event to prevent unexpected operations. The executable part of a t rigger c an c ontain pr ocedural s tatements and S QL s tatements. T he s tored procedure an d f unctions have to be c alled e xplicitly while t he database t riggers ar e executed or called implicitly whenever the table is affected by any DML operations.

We c an w rite t riggers t hat will b e invoked w henever one of the following o perations occurs:

- DML commands (Insert, Update, Delete) on a particular table or view issued by any user.
- DDL commands (Create or Alter primarily) issued either by a particular schema/user or by any schema/user in the database.
- Database e vents s uch as logon/logoff, er rors or s tartup/shutdown, i ssued either by a particular schema/user or by any schema/user in the database
- > Uses of Triggers
- 1. Trigger a llows e nforcing b usiness rules that c an't be defined by using integrity constants.
- 2. Trigger enables us to gain strong control over the security.
- 3. Using trigger we can also collect statistical information on the table access.
- 4. Using triggers we can prevent invalid transaction.

# **3.5.1 TYPES OF TRIGGERS**

Trigger type d epends on t he type of triggering o peration and b y the level at which the trigger is executed. Triggers are of Two Types.

#### 3.5.1.1 Row Level Triggers

A r ow trigger is triggered e ach time a r ow in the table is affected by the triggering statement. For example, if an update statement updates multiple rows of a table, a row trigger is triggered once for each row affected by the update statement. If the triggering

statement af fects no r ows, the trigger is not executed. R ow triggers should be used when some processing is required whenever a triggering statement affects a single row in a table. Row level triggers are created using the "For Each Row" Clause in the Create Trigger statement.

# 3.5.1.2 Statement Level Triggers

As tatement I evel t rigger is t riggered once on be half of the triggering statement, independent of the number of rows the triggering statement affects (even if no rows are affected). Statement triggers should be used when a triggering statement affects rows in a table but the processing r equired is completely independent of the number of r ows affected. S tatement I evel t riggers are the def ault t rigger c reated v ia C reate T rigger statement.

#### Syntax:

CREATE [OR REPLACE ] TRIGGER Trigger_Name
{BEFORE   AFTER   INSTEAD OF }
{INSERT [OR]   UPDATE [OR]   DELETE}
[OF col_name]
ON table_name
[REFERENCING OLD AS o NEW AS n]
[FOR EACH ROW]
WHEN (condition)
BEGIN
SQL statements
END;

# Explanation:

- CREATE [OR REPLACE] TRIGGER trigger\_name : This c reates a t rigger with the given name or overwrites an existing trigger with the same name.
- {BEFORE | AFTER | INSTEAD OF} : This s pecifies at what time the trigger g et fired. i.e bef ore or after u pdating a table. B efore m eans b efore c ompiling t he statement the trigger will b e fired, after m eans after the compilation the trigger

will be fired. INSTEAD OF is used to create a trigger on a view. Before and after cannot be used to create a trigger on a view.

- {INSERT [OR] | UPDATE [OR] | DELETE} : This determines the triggering event.
   There are more than one triggering events that can be used together separated by OR keyword. The trigger gets fired at all the specified triggering event.
- [OF c ol\_name]: This c lause is us ed with upd ate t riggers. T his c lause is us ed when we want the trigger to fire only when a specific column is updated.
- [ON table\_name] : This clause specifies the name of the table or view to which the trigger is associated.
- [REFERENCING OLD AS o NEW AS n]: This clause is used to reference the old and new values of the data being changed. By default, we reference the values as : old.column\_name or : new.column\_name. W e c annot r eference o ld v alues when inserting a record, or new values when deleting a record because they do not exist.
- [FOR EACH ROW] : This clause is used to determine whether a trigger must fire when e ach row gets a ffected (i.e. a Row L evel Trigger) or just once when the entire SQL statement is executed (i.e. statement level Trigger).
- WHEN (condition) : This clause is valid only for row level triggers. The trigger is fired only for rows that satisfy the specified condition.

# 3.5.1.3 INSTEAD OF Trigger

This type of trigger enables us to s top a nd r edirect the p erformance of a D ML statement. This type of trigger helps us in managing the way we write to non-updatable views. S ometimes, the INSTEAD O F t riggers are all so s een i nserting, up dating or deleting rows in designated tables that are otherwise unrelated to the view.

# 3.5.1.4 Compound Triggers

These ar e m ulti-tasking t riggers t hat w ork as bot h s tatement as w ell as r ow-level triggers when the data is inserted, updated or deleted from a relation.

# **3.5.2 DML TRIGGERS**

These triggers are executed before or after we perform any DML operations on a table. When w e c reate a t rigger, t he t rigger def inition i s s tored i n t he da tabase, w hich i s
identified with the trigger name. The code in the trigger is processed when we apply any command on the database or table.

## > Statement Level Triggers:

**Example 1:** Create a Trigger, which displays a message whenever we insert a new row in to Employee table.

```
Create or replace trigger instrigger before insert on Employee
Begin
dbms_output.put_line('one record inserted successfully.....');
End;
/
```

**Example 2.**Create a T rigger, W hich di splays a m essage w henever w e updat e an existing row in the tableEmployee.

```
Create or replace trigger updtrigger before update on Employee
Begin
dbms_output.put_line('one record updated successfully.....');
End;
/
```

**Example 3.**Create a Trigger, which displays a message whenever we delete a row from the table Employee.

```
Create or replace trigger deltrigger before delete on Employee
Begin
```

```
dbms_output.put_line('record(s) deleted successfully.....');
```

End;

## > Row Level Triggers:

**Example 1.**Create a Trigger, which displays a message whenever we insert a new row into a tableEmployee.

```
Create or replace trigger instrigger before insert on Employee
for each row
Begin
dbms_output.put_line(:new.id||' record inserted successfully.....');
End;
```

**Example 2.**Create a t rigger, which displays a m essage whenever we up date a r ow in

the table Employee.

```
Create or replace trigger updtrigger before update on Employee
for each row
Begin
dbms_output.put_line(:old.id||' record updated to '||:new.id);
End;
```

**Example 3.**Create a Trigger, which displays a message whenever we delete a row from the table Employee.

```
Create or replace trigger deltrigger after delete on Employee
for each row
Begin
dbms_output.put_line(:old.id||' record deleted successfully.....');
End;
```

## 3.5.3 DDL TRIGGERS

**Example 1.**Create a T rigger, which displays an error message whenever we create a new table.

Create or replace trigger restrict\_CreateTable

```
before create on schema
begin
    raise_application_error(-20001,'CREATE Table not Permitted');
end;
/
```

As we can see that the above code creates a trigger restrict\_CreateTable. Now when we try to create a table named test it will not allow us to do so.

**Example 2.**Create a Trigger, which will display an error message whenever we try to drop any table. Now create one table named Test as shown below.

• Create table Test(tno number(3),tname varchar2(20));

Create or replace trigger restrict_DropTable				
before drop on schema				
begin				
raise_application_error(-20001,'DROP Table not permitted');				
end;				
/				

After the a bove block of c ode gets executed it will c reate a trigger r estrict\_DropTable. Now try to drop the previously created table Test and check the output.

**Example 3.**Create a Trigger, which will display an error message whenever we try to alter any table.

```
Create or replace trigger restrict_AlterTable
before alter on schema
begin
raise_application_error(-20001,'ALTER Table not permitted');
end;
```

After the a bove b lock of c ode gets executed it will c reate a t rigger r estrict\_AlterTable. Now try to alter the previously created table Test and check the output.

**Example 4.**Create a T rigger, w hich di splays an er ror m essage w henever w e t ry t o truncate any table.

```
Create or replace trigger restrict_TruncateTable
before truncate on schema
begin
raise_application_error(-20001,'TRUNCATE table not Permitted');
end;
```

After the above block of code gets executed it will create a trigger restrict\_TruncateTable. Now try to truncate the previously created table Test and check the output.

## 3.6 LEVELS OF TRIGGER

Level of trigger can be categorized as follows.

## **3.6.1 BEFORE INSERT TRIGGER**

A Before Insert trigger means the trigger will be fired before the insert operation is executed.

## Syntax:

```
CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] TRIGGER trigger_name
BEFORE INSERT
ON table_name
[ FOR EACH ROW ]
DECLARE
-- variable declarations
BEGIN
```

```
-- trigger code
EXCEPTION
WHEN ...
-- exception handling
END;
```

Suppose we have a table named Customer\_Order created as follows:

```
Create Table Customer_Order
(Custorder_id number(5), Ordquantity number(4),
cost_per_Orditem number(6,2), total_Ordcost number(8,2),
ord_date date, Ordcreated_by varchar2(10) );
```

After c reating t he t able, w e c an then us e t he C reate Trigger s tatement t o c reate a Before Insert Trigger as follows:

## Example:



/

Once the trigger is created insert following records into the table. When we insert the records the trigger will be invoked implicitly.

- insert into Customer\_Order values(1,12,5,60,'28-march-19','vinod');
- insert into Customer\_Order values(2,5,15,75,'28-march-19','mukesh');

By observing the above execution, we can say that when we have inserted the records with d ate an d us er '28-march-19','vinod' & '28-march-19','mukesh' r espectively; t he created trigger will fire implicitly on Customer\_Order table and replace the date and user values as per the trigger body.

**Note:** The values in Ord\_Date and OrdCreated\_By columns may be different for you as they depend on system date and user logged in.

## **3.6.2 AFTER INSERT TRIGGER**

An After Insert Trigger means that the trigger will be fired after the insert operation is executed.

## Syntax:



```
-- exception handling
```

## Example:

1

Suppose we have a table named Customer as follows:

```
Create Table Customer
(emp_id num ber(4), em p_name v archar2(30), c reation_date d ate, c reated_by
varchar2(30) );
```

We will also create a duplicate table of 'Customer' table as 'Duplicate\_Customer' using the code below:

Create Table Duplicate\_Customer As (select \* from Customer);

At this moment we have not inserted any data in 'Customer' and 'Duplicate\_Customer' tables. Now, create a trigger on 'Customer' table so that whenever we will enter any customer record in the 'Customer' table the same record also gets stored in 'Duplicate\_ Customer' table.

## Trigger:



```
--Getting the name of the current logged in User
Select User INTO creator_name From dual;
--setting system date in creation_date
creation_date := sysdate;
--Inserting data into the Duplicate_Customer table
Insert into Duplicate_Customer
Values ( :new.emp_id , :new.emp_name , c reation_date ,
creator_name);
End;
/
```

Here we have created a PL/SQL After Insert Trigger named 'After\_InsertData\_trigger' which will insert a record in the 'Duplicate\_Customer' table as soon as insert operation is performed on 'Customer' table.

Let's insert a row in 'Customer' table as:

• Insert Into Customer Values (1, 'himanshu',sysdate,'vinod');

After executing above Insert statement, we can query on both the tables and check the output.

Here using the PL/SQL After Insert Trigger we can see that in the 'Duplicate\_Customer' table a record got inserted as soon as we inserted a record in 'Customer' table.

We c an al so create t rigger f or bef ore upd ate, af ter upd ate, b efore d elete and af ter delete operations.

## 3.6.3 DROP TRIGGER

After c reating a t rigger in O racle, w e m ight f ind t hat w e need to r emove it f rom t he database. We can do this with the Drop Trigger statement.

Syntax:

• Drop Trigger Trigger-Name;

Example:

• Drop trigger After\_InsertData\_trigger;

## 3.6.4 ENABLE-DISABLE TRIGGER

Whenever w e ne ed t o di sable the trigger, we c an do this w ith t he Alter Trigger statement.

#### Example:

ALTER Trigger Before\_Insert\_Trigger DISABLE;

Above s tatement us est he Alter T rigger s tatement t o di sable t he t rigger called Before\_Insert\_Trigger.

#### > Disable all Triggers on a Table

We c an disable all triggers as sociated with a t able at the same time using the Alter Table statement with the Disable All Triggers option. For example, to disable all triggers defined for the Customer\_Order table, we can write the following command.

#### Syntax:

• Alter table table\_name Disable All Triggers;

#### > Enable a Trigger

Sometimes we want to enable trigger on a table which is disabled earlier. We can do this with the help of Alter Trigger statement.

#### Syntax:

• ALTER TRIGGER trigger\_name ENABLE;

## Example:

• ALTER TRIGGER orders\_before\_insert ENABLE;

This ex ample us est he Alter Triggers tatement to enable the trigger called orders before insert.

## > Enable all Triggers on a Table

We c an enable all triggers as sociated with a table at the same time using the Alter Table statement with the Enable All Triggers option. To enable all triggers defined for the Customer\_Order table, enter the following command.

#### Syntax:

• Alter Table table\_name Enable All Triggers;

#### Example:

• Alter Table Customer\_Order Enable All Triggers;

## **3.7 USER**

To create a user, simply issue the Create User command to generate a new account.

## **3.7.1 CREATING A USER**

Example:

• Create User Ved Identified By rdbms;

Here we have simply created a Ved account that is identified or a uthenticated by the rdbms password.

Privileges and Roles

**Privileges** defines the access rights provided to a user on a database objects. There are two types of privileges:

I. System Privileges: This privilege allows user to create, alter, or drop database elements.

II. Object Privileges: This privilege allows user to execute, select, insert, or delete data from database objects to which the privileges apply.

Roles ar e t he c ollection o f pr ivileges or ac cess r ights. In c ase of m any us ers i n a database it becomes complex to grant or revoke privileges to the users. So, if we define roles we can automatically grant/revoke privileges.

Data Control Language (DCL) commands are used to enforce database security in a multiple da tabase en vironment. T wo types of D CL commands us ed ar e Grant a nd Revoke. Database Administrator's or owner's of the database object c an provide or remove privileges on a database object.

## 3.7.2 GRANT COMMAND

SQL Grant command is used to provide access or privileges on the database objects to the users. The **syntax** for the GRANT command is:

• GRANT pr ivilege\_name O N o bject\_name T O { user\_name | P UBLIC |

## role\_name} [with GRANT option];

Where,

- privilege\_name is the access right or privilege granted to the user.
- object\_name is the name of the database object like table, view etc.
- user\_name is the name of the user to whom an access right is being granted.
- Public is used to grant rights to all the users.
- With Grant option allows users to grant access rights to other users.

In c reate us er s ection, w e have Ved ac count c reated, w e c an now s tart a dding privileges to the account using the GRANT statement. GRANT is a very important and powerful c ommand w ith m any possible o ptions. G enerally, w e f irst w ant t o as sign privileges to the user through connecting the account to various roles.

## Syntax:

• GRANT<privilege> to <user>

## Example:

• Grant Connect to Ved;

To allow your user to login, we need to give it the create session privilege as shown below:

• Grant create session to Ved;

We c an give m any s ystem pr ivileges in one c ommand also. Grant these to V ed by chaining them together as shown below:

• Grant create table, create view, create procedure, create sequence to Ved;

In newer versions of oracle it is not necessary but some older version may require that we m anually as sign t he ac cess r ights t o t he new us er t o a s pecific schema and database tables. For example, if we want our Ved us ert o have the ability to perform S elect, U pdate, Insert and D elete operation on t he s tudent t able, we might e xecute the f ollowing GRANT statement:

• Grant select, insert, update, delete on schema.student to Ved;

This ensures that Ved can perform the four basic operation for the student table that is part of the database schema.

## 3.7.3 REVOKE COMMAND

The revoke command removes user access rights or privileges to the database objects. The syntax for the REVOKE command is:

 REVOKE privilege\_name O N object\_name F ROM { User\_name | P UBLIC | Role\_name}

For e xample t o r evoke s elect, up date, i nsert privilege gr anted t o Ved t hen give t he following statement.

• revoke select, update, insert on employee from Ved;

To r evoke up date s tatement on em ployee gr anted t o pu blic t hen gi ve t he f ollowing command.

• revoke update on employee from public;

## > Revoking System Privileges and Roles:

We can revoke system privileges or roles using the SQL command revoke. Any user with the adm in capacity for a system privilege or role can revoke the privilege or role from any other database user. The grantor does not have to be the user that originally granted the privilege or role. The following statement revokes the create table System Privilege from Ved:

• Revoke create table from Ved;

## > Revoking Object Privileges and Roles:

We can revoke object privileges using the SQL command revoke. To revoke an object privilege, the revoker must be the original grantor of the object privilege being revoked. For example, assuming you are the original grantor, to revoke the select and insert privileges on the employee table from the users Ved and Shrey, you have to issue the following command:

• Revoke select, insert on employee from Ved, Shrey;

## > Revoking Column Selective Object Privileges:

Users can grant specific column level insert, update and references privileges for tables and v iews. B ut t hey c annot r evoke c olumn s pecific pr ivileges w ith a s imilar r evoke statement. For that, the grantor must first revoke the object privilege for all columns of a table or view, and then regrant the column specific privileges.

For example, assume that role Computer\_Science is granted the up date privilege on the deptId and dname columns of the table dept. To revoke the update privilege on just the deptId column, we have to issue the following two commands:

- Revoke update on dept from Computer\_Science;
- Grant update (dname) on dept to Computer\_Science;

The revoke statement revokes update privilege on all columns of the dept table from the role C omputer\_Science. T he grant s tatement regrants u pdate privilege on t he d name column to the role Computer\_Science.

## 3.7.4 DROP USER

The DROP USER command is used to remove a user from the oracle database and remove all objects owned by that user.

## Syntax:

• DROP USER user\_name [ CASCADE ];

Where:

user\_name: It specifies the name of the user to remove from the Oracle database.

CASCADE: It is optional. It specifies that if user\_name owns any objects (i.e. tables or views in its schema), we must specify CASCADE to drop all of these objects.

## Example:

If the user does not own any objects in its schema, we can execute the following DROP USER statement:

• DROP USER Ved;

Above code will drop the user called Ved. This DROP USER command will only run if Ved does not own any objects in its schema.

If Ved did own objects in its schema, we will need to run the following DROP USER command:

• DROP USER Ved CASCADE;

This DROP USER statement will remove the user Ved, drop all objects (i.e. tables and views) owned by Ved, and all referential integrity constraints on Ved's objects will also be dropped.

## Check Your Progress

1) What is Trigger?

2) When do we use triggers?
3) What is INSTEAD OF triggers?
4) Differentiate between execution of triggers and stored procedures.

5) Write the objects that PL/SQL package may contain.
6) What is PL/SQL packages? State two different parts of the PL/SQL packages.
7) What do you mean by privileges and Grants?

## 3.8 LET US SUM UP

In this unit we have discussed package and trigger. Package allows us to bundle all the objects like function, procedure within it and later we can execute them either directly or from other subprograms. We also learnt that the trigger can be invoked whenever an event occurs. Event may be an Insert, Update or Delete statement. Throughout Trigger discussion we observed that it helps us in enforcing business rules that can't be defined by us ing i ntegrity c onstants. We can gener ate s tatistical da ta us ing trigger a bout the table ac cess. T hrough trigger we c an pr event i nvalid t ransaction f rom execution. S o, both package and trigger objects of PLSQL allows programmer a wide scope in writing sub programs. At last we have learnt the creation of user, granting roles and privileges to users and removing the users.

## 3.9 CHECK YOUR PROGRESS: POSSIBLE ANSWERS

1. Trigger is a database object, executes automatically in response to some events on the t ables or views. It is us ed to maintain the integrity constraint to the da tabase objects.

2. The word 'Trigger' means to activate. Triggers are mainly required for the following goals:

- To maintain complex integrity constraints on the database tables
- To audit table information by recording the changes
- To signal other program actions when changes are made to database table
- To enforce complex business rules
- To preventing invalid transactions

3. The INSTEAD O F triggers are written especially for updating views, which is not possible to modify directly through SQL DML statements.

4. S tored pr ocedure i s ex ecuted e xplicitly by i ssuing pr ocedure c all s tatement f rom another block while trigger is executed implicitly whenever any triggering event like any DML operation happens.

5. A PL/SQL package contains;

- PL/SQL table and record TYPE statements
- Procedures and Functions
- Cursors
- Variables and constants
- Exception and pragmas for associating an error number with an exception

6. PL/SQL package is a schema that groups functions, cursors, stored procedures and variables in one place. PL/SQL packages have the following two parts:

I. Specification part: This part specifies the part where the interface to the application is defined.

II. Body part: Body part specifies the implementation of the specification is defined.

7. P rivileges are t he r ights to execute S QL c ommands. G rants ar e as signed t o t he object s o t hat ob jects c an be ac cessed ac cordingly. Grants c an b e as signed by t he owner or creator of an object.

## 3.10 ASSIGNMENTS

- 1. Explain the uses of database trigger?
- 2. Explain 3 basic parts of a trigger.
- 3. What are the benefits of PL/SQL packages?
- 4. Explain the difference between Triggers and Constraints?
- 5. Explain types of triggers supported by PL/SQL with example.
- 6. Write a trigger that may execute after deleting a record from the table.
- 7. Define User, role and privileges.
- 8. Explain Grant and Revoke command with proper example.

## 3.11 Further Reading

- 1. Advanced PL/SQL Programming: The Definitive Reference by Boobal Ganesan
- 2. SQL/PLSQL, The Programming Language of ORACLE, BPB Publication by Ivan.
- 3. Introduction to Database Systems, 4th Edition, C. J. Date, Narose Publishing.
- 4. http://beginner-sql-tutorial.com/sql-grant-revoke-privileges-roles.htm

## Unit 4:Managing User Privileges & Roles and User Profile

# 4

## **Unit Structure**

- 4.1. Learning Objectives & Outcomes
- 4.2. Introduction
- 4.3. User Role
- 4.4. Privileges
- 4.5. Managing User Role and Privileges
- 4.6. User Profile
- 4.7. Let Us Sum Up
- 4.8. Check your progress: Possible Answers
- 4.9. Assignments
- 4.10. Further Reading

## 4.1 LEARNING OBJECTIVES & OUTCOMES

The objective of this chapter is to make the students,

- To understand User Role
- To learn about Privileges
- To understand User Profile.

## Outcome:

At the end of this unit,

- Students will be able to understand User Role and Privileges.
- Students will be able to create User Defined Role and assign it to the Users.
- S tudents w ill u nderstand difference between S ystem P rivileges a nd S chema Objects

Privileges.

• Students will be able to create User Profile.

## 4.2 INTRODUCTION

Roles, on the other hand, are created by users (usually administrators) and are used to group together privileges or other roles. They are a means of facilitating the granting of multiple privileges or roles to us ers. A user privilege is a right to execute a particular type of SQL statement, or a right to access another user's object.

Each r ole a nd user has its ow n un ique s ecurity d omain. A r ole's s ecurity dom ain includes the privileges granted to the role plus those privileges granted to any roles that are granted to the role.

A user's security domain includes privileges on all schema objects in the corresponding schema, the privileges granted to the user, and the privileges of roles granted to the user that are *currently enabled*. A role can be simultaneously enabled for one user and disabled for a nother. A us er's s ecurity dom ain al so i ncludes the privileges and roles

granted to the user group PUBLIC. The SESSION\_ROLES view shows all roles that are currently enabled.

In some en vironments, you can administer database security us ing the operating system. The operating system can be used to manage the granting (and revoking) of database roles and to manage their pas sword au thentication. This capability is not available on all operating systems.

This chapter describes management of different SQL concepts as follows:

- User Roles
- Privileges
- User Profiles.

## 4.3 User Role

Oracle provides for easy and controlled privilege management through roles. Roles are named groups of related privileges that you grant to users or other roles. Roles are designed to ease the administration of end-user system and s chema object privileges. However, roles are not meant to be used for application developers, because the privileges to access schema objects within stored programmatic constructs need to be granted directly.

Reduced pr ivilege	Rather than gr anting the s ame s et of p rivileges e xplicitly t o
administration	several users, you can grant the privileges for a group of related
	users to a role, and then only the role needs to be granted to
	each member of the group.
Dynamic privilege	If the privileges of a group must change, only the privileges of the
management	role n eed t o be m odified. T he s ecurity d omains of al l us ers
	granted the group's role aut omatically reflect the changes made
	to the role.
Selective	You can selectively enable or disable the roles granted to a user.

These properties of roles allow for easier privilege management within a database:

availability	of	This al lows s pecific c ontrol of a us er's privileges in an y given
privileges		situation.
Application		The data dictionary records which roles exist, so you can design
awareness		applications to query the dictionary and a utomatically enable (or
		disable) s elective r oles w hen a user at tempts t o ex ecute the
		application by way of a given username.
Application-		You can protect role use with a password. Applications can be
specific security		created s pecifically to enable a role when supplied the correct
		password. Users cannot en able the role if they do not know the
		password.
Application- specific security		disable) s elective r oles w hen a user at tempts t o ex ecute to application by way of a given username. You c an protect r ole use with a p assword. Applications c an created s pecifically t o enable a r ole w hen s upplied t he c orro- password. Users c annot en able the role if they do not k now to password.

In general, you create a role to serve one of two purposes: to manage the privileges for a database application or to manage the privileges for a user group.



**Application Roles:** You grant an application role all privileges necessary to run a given database ap plication. Then, you grant the application role to other roles or to specific users. A n ap plication c an hav e s everal di fferent roles, w ith each role as signed a different s et of privileges t hat a llow for more or I ess da ta access w hile us ing t he application.

**User Roles:** You c reate a user r ole f or a group of dat abase us ers w ith c ommon privilege r equirements. You m anage user privileges by gr anting ap plication roles and privileges to the user role and then granting the user role to appropriate users.

Database roles have the following functionality:

- A role can be granted system or schema object privileges.
- A role can be granted to other roles. However, a role cannot be granted to itself and cannot be granted circularly.
- Any role can be granted to any database user.
- Each role granted to a user is, at a given time, either enabled or disabled.
- An indirectly granted role (a role granted to a role) can be explicitly enabled or disabled for a us er. However, by enabling a role that contains of her roles, you implicitly enable all indirectly granted roles of the directly granted role.

Granting and Revoking Roles

You grant or revoke roles from users or other roles using the following options:

- The Grant S ystem P rivileges/Roles di alog bo x a nd R evoke S ystem Privileges/Roles dialog box of Oracle Enterprise Manager
- The SQL commands GRANT and REVOKE

Roles c an al so be gr anted to an d r evoked from us ers us ing the oper ating s ystem that executes Oracle, or through network services.

Any us er with the GRANT ANY ROLE system privilege c an grant or revoke any role (except a global role) to or from other users or roles of the database. Any user granted a role with the ADMIN OPTION c an grant or revoke that role to or from other users or roles of the database.

## **Predefined Roles**

The r oles C ONNECT, R ESOURCE, D BA, E XP\_FULL\_DATABASE, and IMP\_FULL\_DATABASE are defined automatically for Oracle databases. These roles are provided for backward c ompatibility t o e arlier v ersions of O racle and c an be modified in the same manner as any other role in an Oracle database.

## 4.4 Privileges

A privilege is a right to execute a particular type of SQL statement or to access another user's object. Some examples of privileges include the right to

- connect to the database (create a session)
- create a table
- select rows from another user's table
- execute another user's stored procedure

You grant privileges to users so these users can accomplish tasks required for their job. Excessive granting of unn ecessary privileges can compromise security. A user can receive a privilege in two different ways:

- You can grant privileges to users explicitly.
- You c an also gr ant pr ivileges to a r ole (a nam ed gr oup of pr ivileges), a nd then grant the role to one or more users.

There are two distinct categories of privileges:

- System privileges
- Schema object privileges

## A. System Privileges

A system privilege is the right to perform a particular action, or to perform an action on any s chema obj ects of a par ticular t ype. F or example, t he pr ivileges t o c reate tablespaces and to d elete t he rows of an y t able in a d atabase are s ystem privileges. There are o ver 100 distinct s ystem privileges. E ach s ystem privilege a llows a user to perform a particular database operation or class of database operations.

You c an gr ant or r evoke s ystem pr ivileges t o us ers and r oles. If you gr ant s ystem privileges to roles, you can use the roles to manage system privileges System privileges are granted to or revoked from users and roles using either of the following:

- The Grant S ystem P rivileges/Roles di alog bo x a nd R evoke S ystem Privileges/Roles dialog box of Oracle Enterprise Manager
- The SQL commands GRANT and REVOKE

Only users who have been granted a specific system privilege with the ADMIN OPTION or users with the GRANT ANY PRIVILEGE system privilege can grant or revoke system privileges to other users.

Because system privileges are so powerful, Oracle recommends that you configure your database to prevent regular (non-DBA) us ers exercising ANY system privileges (such as UPDATE ANY TABLE) on the data dictionary. In order to secure the data dictionary, ensure t hat the O7\_DICTIONARY\_ACCESSIBILITY initialization p arameter i s s et to FALSE. This feature is called the **dictionary protection mechanism**.

#### B. Schema Object Privileges

As chema object privilege is a privilege or right to perform a particular action on a specific table, view, s equence, procedure, f unction, or pac kage. D ifferent o bject privileges are available for different types of schema objects. Some s chema objects (such as clusters, indexes, triggers, and da tabase links) do not have as sociated ob ject privileges; their use is controlled with system privileges. For example, to a lter a cluster, a user must ow n the cluster or have the ALTER A NY CLUSTER system privilege.

A schema object and its synonym are equivalent with respect to privileges; that is, the object privileges granted for a t able, view, sequence, procedure, function, or package apply whether referencing the base object by name or using a synonym.

Schema object privileges can be granted to and revoked from users and roles. If you grant ob ject privileges to roles, y ou c an m ake t he privileges s electively a vailable. Object privileges f or us ers and roles c an b e granted or revoked us ing t he S QL commands G RANT and R EVOKE, r espectively, or t he Add Privilege to R ole/User dialog b ox a nd R evoke P rivilege from R ole/User di alog box of O racle E nterprise Manger.

## 4.5 Managing User Role and Privileges

## 4.5.1. CREATE ROLE

You may wish to create a role so that you can logically group the users' permissions. Please note that to create a role, you must have CREATE ROLE system privileges.

You must give each role you create a unique name among existing user names and role names of t he d atabase. R oles ar e not c ontained in t he s chema of a ny user. In a database that uses a multibyte character set, Oracle recommends that each role name contain at I east o ne s ingle-byte c haracter. If a r ole nam e c ontains on ly m ultibyte characters, t hen t he enc rypted r ole nam e a nd pas sword c ombination is c onsiderably less secure.

Syntax

## CREATE ROLE <ROLE\_NAME>

[NOT IDENTIFIED | IDENTIFIED {BY password | USING [schema.] package | EXTERNALLY | GLOBALLY }];

#### Where,

**ROLE\_NAME:** The n ame of the n ew role that y ou are creating. This is how you will refer to the grouping of privileges.

**NOT IDENTIFIED:** It m eans t hat t he role is i mmediately en abled. No pas sword is required to enable the role.

**IDENTIFIED:** It means that a user must be authorized by a specified method before the role is enabled.

BY password: It means that a user must supply a password to enable the role.

**USING package:** It means that you are creating an application role - a role that is enabled only by applications using an authorized package.

**EXTERNALLY:** It m eans t hat a us er m ust be aut horized by a n ex ternal s ervice t o enable the role. An external service can be an operating system or third-party service.

**GLOBALLY:** It m eans t hat a user m ust b e authorized b y t he enterprise directory service to enable the role.

If b oth NOT IDENTIFIED and IDENTIFIED are om itted i n t he C REATE R OLE statement, the role will be created as a NOT IDENTIFIED role.

#### Example

#### CREATE ROLE DEMO\_ROLE;

It will create New Role called DEMO\_ROLE;

#### A. Grant TABLE Privileges to Role

Once you have created the role in Oracle, your next step is to grant privileges to that role.

Just as you <u>granted privileges to users</u>, you can grant privileges to a role. Let's start with granting table privileges to a role. Table privileges can be any combination of SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, REFERENCES, ALTER, INDEX, or ALL.

## Syntax

## GRANT <PRIVILEGES> ON <OBJECT> TO <ROLE\_NAME>;

## Where,

Privileges: The privileges to assign to the role. It can be any of the following values:

Privilege	Description
SELECT	Ability to perform SELECT statements on the table.
INSERT	Ability to perform INSERT statements on the table.
UPDATE	Ability to perform UPDATE statements on the table.
DELETE	Ability to perform DELETE statements on the table.
REFERENCES	Ability to create a constraint that refers to the table.
ALTER	Ability to perform ALTER TABLE statements to change the table definition.
INDEX	Ability to c reate a n i ndex on t he t able w ith t he c reate i ndex
	statement.
ALL	All privileges on table.

**Object:** The name of the dat abase object that you are granting privileges for. In the case of granting privileges on a table, this would be the table name.

Role\_Name: The name of the role that will be granted these privileges.

## Example

1. If you wanted to grant SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE privileges on a table c alled salesman to a role nam ed DEMO\_ROLE, you would run the following GRANT statement:

GRANT select, insert, update, delete ON salesman TO DEMO\_ROLE;

2. You can a lso us e the ALL k eyword to indicate that you wish all permissions to be granted. **GRANT all ON salesman TO DEMO\_ROLE;** 

## B. Revoke Table Privileges from Role

Once you have granted table privileges to a role, you may need to revoke some or all of these privileges. To do this, you can execute a revoke command. You can revoke any combination of SE LECT, INSERT, U PDATE, D ELETE, R EFERENCES, AL TER, INDEX, or ALL.

#### Syntax

## REVOKE <PRIVILEGES> ON <OBJECT> FROM <ROLE\_NAME>;

#### Where,

**Privileges:** The privileges to revoke from the role. It can be any of the following values:

Privilege	Description
SELECT	Ability to perform SELECT statements on the table.
INSERT	Ability to perform INSERT statements on the table.
UPDATE	Ability to perform UPDATE statements on the table.
DELETE	Ability to perform DELETE statements on the table.
REFERENCES	Ability to create a constraint that refers to the table.
ALTER	Ability to per form ALTER TABLE statements to change the table definition.
INDEX	Ability to c reate a n i ndex o n t he t able w ith t he c reate i ndex
	statement.
ALL	All privileges on table.

**Object:** The name of the d atabase object that y ou are r evoking privileges for. In the case of revoking privileges on a table, this would be the table name.

Role\_Name: The name of the role that will have these privileges revoked.

## Example

1. If you wanted to revoke DELETE privileges on a table called salesman from a role named DEMO\_ROLE, you would run the following REVOKE statement:

## REVOKE delete ON salesman FROM DEMO\_ROLE;

2. If you wanted to revoke ALL privileges on the table called Salesman from a role named DEMO\_ROLE, you could use the ALL keyword.

## REVOKE all ON salesman FROM DEMO\_ROLE;

## 4.5.2. GRANT ROLE TO USER

Now, that you've created the role and assigned the privileges to the role, you'll need to grant the role to specific users.

## Syntax GRANT <ROLE NAME> TO <USER NAME>;

## Where,

Role\_Name: The name of the role that you wish to grant.

User\_Name: The name of the user that will be granted the role.

## Example

## 1. GRANT DEMO\_ROLE TO SCOTT;

This example would grant the role called DEMO\_ROLE to the user named SCOTT.

## A. Enable/Disable Role (Set Role Statement)

To enable or disable a role for a current session, you can use the SET ROLE statement. When a us er logs into O racle, all default roles are enabled, but no n-default roles must be enabled with the SET ROLE statement. Syntax

SET ROLE ( ROLE\_NAME [ IDENTIFIED BY PASSWORD ] | ALL [EXCEPT ROLE1, ROLE2, ... ] | NONE );

**Role\_Name :** The name of the role that you wish to enable.

**IDENTIFIED BY password:** The password for the role to enable it. If the role does not have a password, this phrase can be omitted.

**ALL:** It m eans t hat all roles s hould b e en abled for t his c urrent s ession, e xcept t hose listed in EXCEPT.

NONE: Disables all roles for the current session (including all default roles).

#### Example

## SET ROLE DEMO\_ROLE IDENTIFIED BY demo123;

This enable the role called DEMO\_ROLE with a password of demo123.

## B. Set role as DEFAULT Role

A default role means that the role is always enabled for the current session at logon. It is not necessary to issue the SET ROLE statement. To set a role as a DEFAULT ROLE, you need to issue the ALTER USER statement.

## Syntax

ALTER USER <USER\_NAME> DEFAULT ROLE ( <ROLE\_NAME> | ALL [EXCEPT ROLE1, ROLE2, ... ] | NONE );

## Where,

**USER\_NAME:** The name of the user whose role you are setting as DEFAULT.

**ROLE\_NAME:** The name of the role that you wish to set as DEFAULT.

**ALL:** It m eans t hat all r oles s hould be enabled as D EFAULT, e xcept t hose I isted in EXCEPT.

**NONE:** Disables all roles as DEFAULT.

Example

## ALTER USER scott DEFAULT ROLE DEMO\_ROLE;

It would set the role called DEMO\_ROLE as a DEFAULT role for the user named scott.

## 4.5.3. DROP ROLE

In some cases, it may be appropriate to drop a role from the database. The security domains of all users and roles granted a dropped role is immediately changed to reflect the absence of the dropped role privileges. All indirectly granted roles of the dropped role are also removed from affected s ecurity domains. D ropping a role automatically removes the role from all user default role lists.

Because the creation of objects is not dependent on the privileges received through a role, tables and other objects are not dropped when a role is dropped.

Syntax DROP ROLE <ROLE\_NAME>;

# Example **DROP ROLE DEMO\_ROLE;**

It will drop the role called DEMO\_ROLE that we defined earlier.

## 4.6 USER PROFILE

Profile is a set of limits on database resources. If you assign the profile to a user, then that us er c annot exceed these limits. Use profiles to limit the dat abase r esources available to a user for a single call or a single session.

Prerequisites

- To create a profile, you must have the CREATE PROFILE system privilege.
- To specify resource limits for a user, you must:

- Enable resource limits dynamically with the ALTER SYSTEM statement or with the initialization parameter RESOURCE\_LIMIT. This parameter does not apply to password resources. Password resources are always enabled.
- Create a profile that defines the limits using the CREATE PROFILE statement
- Assign the profile to the user using the CREATE USER or ALTER USER statement

Oracle Database enforces resource limits in the following ways:

- If a us er ex ceeds t he CONNECT\_TIME or IDLE\_TIME session r esource I imit, then the database rolls back the current transaction and ends the session. When the user process next issues a call, the database returns an error.
- If a user attempts to perform an operation that exceeds the limit for other session resources, t hen t he da tabase ab orts t he op eration, r olls back t he c urrent statement, and immediately returns a n error. T he user c an t hen c ommit or r oll back the current transaction, and must then end the session.
- If a user attempts to perform an operation that exceeds the limit for a single call, then t he d atabase a borts t he operation, r olls bac k the c urrent s tatement, a nd returns an error, leaving the current transaction intact.

## 4.6.1. CREATE PROFILE

## Syntax

CREATE PROFILE <PROFILE\_NAME> LIMIT [Resource Parameter | Password Parameter];

#### UNLIMITED

When specified with a r esource parameter, UNLIMITED indicates that a us er as signed this pr ofile c an us e an u nlimited am ount of t his r esource. W hen s pecified with a password parameter, UNLIMITED indicates that no limit has been set for the parameter.

#### DEFAULT

Specify DEFAULT if you want to om it a limit for this resource in this profile. A us er assigned t his profile is subject to the limit for this resource specified in the DEFAULT profile. The DEFAULT profile initially defines unlimited resources. You can change those limits with the ALTER PROFILE statement.

Any us er w ho is n ot ex plicitly as signed a profile is subject to the limits defined in the DEFAULT profile. Also, if the profile that is explicitly assigned to a user omits limits for some resources or specifies DEFAULT for some limits, then the user is subject to the limits on those resources defined by the DEFAULT profile.

## **RESOURCE\_PARAMETERS**

- **SESSIONS\_PER\_USER:** Specify the number of concurrent sessions to which you want to limit the user.
- **CPU\_PER\_SESSION:** Specify the C PUt ime I imit f or a s ession, ex pressed in hundredth of seconds.
- **CPU\_PER\_CALL:** Specify the CPU time limit for a call (a parse, execute, or fetch), expressed in hundredths of seconds.
- **CONNECT\_TIME:** Specify the total e lapsed time I imit for a session, expressed in minutes.
- IDLE\_TIME: Specify t he permitted p eriods of c ontinuous inactive time d uring a session, expressed in m inutes. Lon g-running queries and ot her op erations are not subject to this limit.

- LOGICAL\_READS\_PER\_SESSION: Specify the permitted number of datab locks read in a session, including blocks read from memory and disk.
- LOGICAL\_READS\_PER\_CALL: Specify the permitted number of data blocks read for a call to process a SQL statement (a parse, execute, or fetch).
- PRIVATE\_SGA: Specify the amount of private space a session can allocate in the shared pool of t he s ystem g lobal ar ea (SGA). P lease r efer t o <u>size clause</u> for information on that clause.

## PASSWORD\_PARAMETERS

Use the following clauses to s et pas sword parameters. P arameters that s et lengths of time are interpreted in n umber of d ays. For t esting purposes you c an specify m inutes (n/1440) or even seconds (n/86400).

- FAILED\_LOGIN\_ATTEMPTS: Specify the num ber of failed at tempts to l og in to the user account before the account is locked.
- PASSWORD\_LIFE\_TIME: Specify the number of days the same password can be used for authentication. If you also set a value for PASSWORD\_GRACE\_TIME, the password expires if it is not changed within the grace period, and further connections are rejected. If you do not set a value for PASSWORD\_GRACE\_TIME, its default of UNLIMITED will cause the database to issue a warning but let the user continue to connect indefinitely.
- PASSWORD\_REUSE\_TIME and PASSWORD\_REUSE\_MAX: These t wo parameters must be set in conjunction with each other. PASSWORD\_REUSE\_TIME specifies t he num ber of days b efore w hich a password c annot be r eused. PASSWORD\_REUSE\_MAX specifies t he n umber of password changes required before the current password can be reused. For these parameter to have any effect, you must specify an integer for both of them.
  - If you specify an integer for both of these parameters, then the user cannot reuse a password until the password has been c hanged the pas sword the number of times specified for PASSWORD\_REUSE\_MAX during the number of days specified for PASSWORD\_REUSE\_TIME.

- If you specify an integer for either of these parameters and specify UNLIMITED for the other, then the user can never reuse a password.
- If you specify DEFAULT for either parameter, then Oracle Database uses the value def ined in the DEFAULT profile. By de fault, all par ameters are set to UNLIMITED in the DEFAULT profile. If you have not changed the def ault setting of UNLIMITED in the DEFAULT profile, then the database treats the value for that parameter as UNLIMITED.
- If you set both of these parameters to UNLIMITED, then the database ignores both of them.
- **PASSWORD\_LOCK\_TIME:** Specify the num ber of days an ac count will be locked after the specified number of consecutive failed login attempts.
- PASSWORD\_GRACE\_TIME: Specify the n umber of d ays after the grace per iod begins during which a warning is issued and login is allowed. If the password is not changed during the grace period, the password expires.
- PASSWORD\_VERIFY\_FUNCTION: The PASSWORD\_VERIFY\_FUNCTION claus e lets a PL/SQL password complexity verification script be passed as an argument to the CREATEPROFILE statement.

## Examples

The following statement creates the profile named NEW\_USER\_PROFILE: CREATE PROFILE NEW\_USER\_PROFILE LIMIT PASSWORD\_REUSE\_MAX 10 PASSWORD\_REUSE\_TIME 30;

## > Check Your Progress

21. How can any user Grant/Revoke a granted role to/from other users?

.....

22. How can user receive a Privileges?

23. Explain Set Role Statement of SQL.

.....

24. What is User Profile?

## 4.7 LET US SUM UP

In this chapter, we have learnt a bout Role and Privileges. We have also concluded the system and obj ect privileges. We have also explored different operation of User Role like Create, Grant and Revoke Role and Drop. We have come to know how can we set limits on resources for any user using profiles.

## **4.8 CHECK YOUR PROGRESS: POSSIBLE ANSWERS**

- 5. Any user Granted a r ole with ADMIN O PTION c an Grant/Revoke that r ole to/from any other users.
- 6. A user can receive Privileges in two different ways.
  - a. Grant Privileges to Users explicitly
  - b. Grant P rivileges to a R ole and then Grant that R ole to on e or m ore users.
- 7. Set R ole S tatement i s us ed t o E nable or D isable a r ole f or t he c urrent session.
8. User Profile is a set of limits on database resources and user cannot exceed these limits.

## 4.9 ASSIGNMENTS

- 1. Explain P rivileges. Also describe difference bet ween S ystem P rivileges and Object Privileges.
- 2. What is User Role? Describe with all options.
- 3. Explain User Profile in detail with all parameters.

## 4.10 Further Reading

- 1. SQL/PLSQL, The ProgrammingLanguage of ORACLE, BPBPublication by Ivan.
- 2. Introduction to Database Systems, 4th Edition, C. J. Date, Narose Publishing.

## Block-4

## Introduction to PL/SQL

# 1

## Unit 1: Introduction to PL/SQL

## **Unit Structure**

- 1.1. Learning Objectives
- 1.2. Introduction
- 1.3. PL/SQL Environment
- 1.4. Advantages of PL/SQL
- 1.5. Fundamentals of PL/SQL
- 1.6. Data types and Variables
- 1.7. Let Us Sum Up
- 1.8. Check Your Progress: Possible Answers
- 1.9. Assignments
- 1.10. Further Reading

## **1.1 LEARNING OBJECTIVES & OUTCOMES**

The objective of this unit is to make the students,

- To learn, understand basics of PL/SQL and its Block structure
- To learn, declare and initialize identifiers in PL/SQL block
- To learn, understand and access local and global variables

#### Outcome:

At the end of this unit,

- Students will be able to declare, initialize and access local and global variables
- Students will be able to write a PL/SQL block and execute it
- Students will be able to print the message or value from the PL/SQL block

## **1.2 INTRODUCTION**

PL/SQL is O racle's procedural I anguage e xtension t o S QL, a r elational database language. PL/SQL thoroughly integrates modern software engineering features such as data encapsulation, information hiding, overloading, exception handling. We don't have a separate place or prompt for executing our PL/SQL programs. PL/SQL technology is like a n e ngine t hat e xecutes P L/SQL bl ocks and s ubprograms. D ue t o t he s trong integration of SQL and PL/SQL, PL/SQL is very effective in data manipulation.

SQL\* Plus is an interactive and batch query tool that will be installed with every Oracle installation. W e c an f ound i t at S tart -> P rograms -> O racle-OraHomeName -> Application D evelopment -> S QL P lus. It h as al so a c ommand line us er interface, Windows G UI, a nd w eb-based us er interface. It a llows t he us er t o c onnect t o t he database and execute PL/SQL commands.

## **1.3 PL/SQL ENVIRONMENT**

With P L/SQL, w e c an us e S QL s tatements t o m anipulate O RACLE da ta an d f low of control s tatements t o pr ocess t he d ata. Moreover, w e c an also d eclare c onstants, variables, define s ubprograms (procedures and f unctions) and ha ndle r untime er rors.

Thus, PL/SQL combines the data manipulating power of SQL with the data processing power of procedural languages.



Figure 1 PL/SQL Environment

PL/SQL engine executes procedural statements and s ends SQL part of statements to SQL statement processor in the Oracle server. PL/SQL combines the data manipulating power of SQL with the data processing power of procedural languages.

## **1.3.1 PL/SQL BLOCK STRUCTURE**

PL/SQL is a block-structured language. i.e. Programs of PL/SQL contain logical blocks.



Figure 2 PL/SQL Block Structure

As shown in the Figure 2 a PL/SQL block has three parts;

**1. Declaration:** Necessary v ariables are declared in t his section. It is optional. T his is an optional section of the code block. It contains the name of the local objects that will be used in the code block. These include variables, cursor definitions, and exceptions. This section begins with the keyword Declare.

**2. Begin:** This section contains executable statements of SQL and PL/SQL. This is the only mandatory section. It contains the statements that will be executed. These consist of S QL s tatements, D ML s tatements, pr ocedures (PL/SQL c ode bl ocks), f unctions (PL/SQL code blocks that return a value), and built-in subprograms. This section starts with the keyword Begin.

**3. Exception:** Any error oc curred while e xecuting the statements in be gin p art c an be handled in this p art. T his is an optional section. It is used to "handle" any errors that occur during the execution of the statements and commands in the executable section. This section begins with the keyword Exception.

The code block is terminated by the End keyword. This is the only keyword within the construct t hat is followed by a s emi-colon (;). The only required s ection is the

executable section. This means the code block must have the Begin and End keywords. The code block is executed by the slash (/) symbol.

## 13.2.2 PL/SQL Block Types

There are three PL/SQL Block types as shown in figure 3.



Figure 3 PI/SQL Block types

PL/SQL is a block-structured language. The named blocks are called subprograms and unnamed blocks are called anonymous blocks. Subprograms can be referred as either functions or procedures. The difference bet ween functions and procedures is t hat a function c an be used in an expression and it returns a value to t hat e xpression. A procedure is i nvoked as a standalone statement and p asses v alues t o t he c alling program only through parameters. Subprograms can be nested within one another and can be grouped in larger units called packages. The basic units (procedures, functions, and anonymous blocks) that make up a PL/SQL program are logical blocks, which can contain any number of nested sub-blocks. Typically, each logical block corresponds to a problem or sub-problem to be solved. Anonymous block don't have the name.

## 1.4 ADVANTAGES OF PL/SQL

There are various advantages of using PL/SQL. They are,

- 1. It is a portable and easy language.
- 2. We can declare identifiers.
- 3. We can program with procedural language control structures.
- 4. It c an handle errors and pr events program from abnormal termination using the exception handling mechanism.
- 5. It modularizes program de velopment through various P L/SQL b locks s uch as Procedure and functions.
- 6. It integrates with Oracle server and shared library.
- 7. It improves performance through better communication with underlying DBMSs.

## **1.5 FUNDAMENTALS OF PL/SQL**

## Lexical Units

PL/SQL is not case-sensitive language, so lower-case letters are equivalent to corresponding up per-case letters except within string and character literals. A line of PL/SQL t ext c ontains groups of c haracters k nown as lexical u nits, which c an be classified as follows:

#### I. Delimiters (Simple and Compound Symbols)

A delimiter is a simple or compound symbol that has a special meaning to PL/SQL. For example, we can use delimiters to represent arithmetic operations such as addition and subtraction.

#### II. Identifiers (include Reserved Words)

We c an us e i dentifiers t o n ame P L/SQL program obj ects and u nits, w hich i nclude constants, variables, exceptions, cursors, subprograms and packages. Some identifiers called Reserved Words, have a special syntactic meaning to PL/SQL and so cannot be redefined. F or f lexibility, P L/SQL lets us t o enclose i dentifiers w ithin double qu otes. Quoted identifiers are seldom needed, but occasionally they can be useful.

#### III. Literals

A literal is an explicit numeric, character, string, or Boolean value not represented by an identifier. Two kinds of numeric literals can be used in arithmetic expressions: integers and reals.

•String literal is a s equence of z ero or m ore c haracters enclosed by single quotes. All string literals except the null string (`') belong to type CHAR. PL/SQL is case-sensitive within string literals.

•Boolean literals are the predefined values TRUE and FALSE and the non-value NULL (which stands for a m issing, unknown, or inapplicable value). Boolean literals are not strings.

## **IV. Comments**

The PL/SQL compiler i gnores comments. Adding comments to our program enhances readability and guides the user in understanding the code. PL/SQL supports two types of comment styles, single-line and multiline.

• Single-line comments begin with a double hyphen (--) anywhere on a line and extend to the end of the line.

• Multiline comments begin with a slash asterisk (/\*), end with an asterisk-slash (\*/), and can span multiple lines. We cannot nest comments.

**Example**: In this code, we are going to print 'Welcome to GVP' and we are also going to check how the commented lines behave in the code.

BEGIN
This is a single line comment
dbms output.put line ('Welcome to GVP');
/*Multi line comments starts
Multi line comment ends */
END;

## 1.6 DATATYPES AND VARIABLES

Every constant and variable has a datatype, which specifies a storage format, constraints and valid range of values.

PL/SQL provides a variety of predefined scalar and composite datatypes. A scalar type has no i nternal c omponents. A c omposite t ype h as i nternal c omponents t hat c an be manipulated individually. PL/SQL mostly used datatypes are discussed below.

#### • NUMBER

We us e the NUMBER dat atype to store fixed or floating point numbers of virtually a ny size. We can specify precision, which is the total number of digits and scale, which determines where rounding occurs.

NUMBER[(precision, scale)]

We cannot us e constants or variables to specify precision and scale; we must us e an integer literals.

#### • CH AR

We us e the C HAR d atatype to s tore fixed-length c haracter da ta. T he C HAR dat atype takes an optional parameter that lets us to specify a maximum length up to 32767 bytes.

```
CHAR[(maximum_length)]
```

We cannot use a constant or variable to specify the maximum length; we must use an integer literal. If we do not specify the maximum length, it defaults to 1.

#### • VARCHAR2

We use the VARCHAR2 datatype to store variable-length character data. The VARCHAR2 dat atype takes a r equired parameter that lets us to specify a m aximum length up to 32767 bytes.

VARCHAR2(maximum\_length)

We cannot use a constant or variable to specify the maximum length; we must use an integer literal.

#### • BOOLEAN

We use the BOOLEAN datatype to store the values TRUE and FALSE and the nonvalue NULL. NULL stands for a missing, unknown, or inapplicable value. The BOOLEAN datatype takes no parameters.

#### • DATE

We use the DATE datatype to store fixed-length date values. The DATE datatype takes no par ameters. Valid dates f or D ATE v ariables i nclude January 1, 4712 B C t o December 31, 4712 AD. When stored in the database column, date values will include the time of day in seconds since midnight. The default date portion is the first day of the current month and the default time portion is the midnight.

#### **Defining Variables**

Variables are defined in the declaration section of the program. The syntax is:

• Variable\_name datatype(precision);

The d efinition m ust e nd w ith a s emi-colon. The definition s tatement b egins w ith the variable name and contains the data type. A value may also be assigned to the variable during the definition statement. The variable may also be constrained.

Variables are used to store results. Forward references are not allowed. So we have to first declare the variable and then use it. Variables can have any SQL datatype, such as CHAR, D ATE, NUMBER et c or any P L/SQL datatype I ike B OOLEAN, BINARY INTEGER etc.

We have to initialize variables designated as NOT NULL and CONSTANT. We have to initialize i dentifiers b y us ing t he as signment op erator ( :=) or t he D EFAULT r eserved word.

#### **Declaring Variables**

Variables are declared in DECLARE section of PL/SQL.

DECLARE Stu\_No number (3); Stu\_Name varchar2 (15);

\_\_\_\_

BEGIN

## Variable Initialization

Variables and constants are initialized every time a block or subprogram is entered. By default, variables are initialized to NULL. So, unless you explicitly initialize a variable, its value i s undef ined. S calar v ariable dec laration an d i nitialization ex amples ar e as follows.

var\_job VARCHAR2(9);

var \_count BINARY\_INTEGER := 0;

var \_total\_sal NUMBER(9,2) := 0;

var \_orderdate DATE := SYSDATE + 3;

var \_tax\_rate CONSTANT NUMBER(3,2) := 8.25;

var\_valid BOOLEAN NOT NULL := TRUE;

## **Constraints Definitions**

Constraints can be placed on the variables defined in the code block. A constraint is a condition that is placed on the variable. Two common constraints are:

• **Constant:** This constraint will cause Oracle to ensure the value is not changed after a value is initially as signed to the v ariable. If a s tatement tries to c hange the v ariable value, a ner ror w ill oc cur. T he f ollowing i s the e xample of c onstrained variable definitions:

PI constant number(9,8) := 3.14159265;

• Not Null: This constraint will cause O racle to ensure the variable always contains a value. If a statement attempts to assign a null value to the variable, an error will occur. The following is the example of constrained variable definitions:

Date\_of\_Birth not null date := '26-March-2019';

## Declaration and usage of variables:

Here we are going to print the 'Welcome to BAOU, Ahmedabad' using the variables and execute it.

```
Set Serveroutput on;
DECLARE
msg VARCHAR2(50);
BEGIN
msg:= 'Welcome to BAOU,Ahmedabad';
dbms_output.put_line (msg);
END:
/
Output:
Welcome to BAOU,Ahmedabad
```

## SET SERVEROUTPUT ON

It is a command used to access results from Oracle Server. A PL/SQL program always followed by a slash ("/") on a line by itself. It sends the information to the compiler that the end of the block is reached. W ithout '/', the compiler will not consider the block is

completed, and it will not execute it. DBMS\_OUTPUT is a package and PUT\_LINE is a function in it.

## Scope of Variables

A variable in PL/SQL block is as local to that block and global to all its Sub-blocks. If we redeclare an i dentifier in a sub-block, we cannot reference the global identifier except we use a qualified name.

#### Example:

In the given example declaration two variables named num1 and num2 are in the outer block (i.e. G lobal v ariable) and third v ariable named n um\_sum declared into the inner block (i.e. local variable). Variable 'num\_sum' is declared in inner block so can't access in the outer block. But no1 and no2 can be accessed anywhere in the block.

```
DECLARE

no1 number := 25;

no2 number := 15;

BEGIN

DECLARE

num_sum number;

BEGIN

num_sum := no1 + no2;

dbms_output.put_line('Sum is: ' || num_sum);

END;

END;

/

Output:

Sum is: 40
```

We can use OUTER keyword to access outer block variable inside the inner block. It is called global qualifier name space.

## Example:

```
DECLARE
  no number := 25;
BEGIN
  DECLARE
    no number := 15;
  BEGIN
    IF no > OUTER.no THEN
     DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Inner variable is greater than outer variable');
    ELSE
     DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Inner variable is smaller than outer variable');
    END IF;
  END;
END;
1
Output:
Inner variable is smaller than outer variable
```

## > Check Your Progress

1) What is the use of Dbms\_output.put\_line()?

2) How do we get input from user in PL/SQL?

..... 3) While doing comparisons which rules to be applied to NULLs? ..... ..... ..... ..... . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 4) Write a PL/SQL program to add two numbers? ..... ..... . ..... . ..... . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 5) T he P L/SQL e ngine e xecutes t he pr ocedural c ommands and passes t he S QL commands to the Oracle server to process. State True or False. ..... 6) Explain types of PL/SQL blocks. ..... . ..... . ..... **1.7LET US SUM UP** 

#### 268

In this u nit, we have discussed about P L/SQL b lock, its ben efit along with the use of SQL\* Plus tool. We have also discussed about how to write the simple PL/SQL program and how t o d eclare a nd us e a v ariable in them. We have also us ed on e pac kage DBMS\_OUTPUT to print the message.

## **1.8CHECK YOUR PROGRESS : POSSIBLE ANSWERS**

## > Check Your Progress

 Dbms\_output.put\_line() s tatement t akes a par ameter w hich c an b e printed on to the console screen. When we start the SQL Command Prompt or Terminal, first we have to type:

Set serveroutput on;

This statement activates the working of print statement on the console screen.

2. We can get input from the user using the '&' sign. For example, to get input in to variable num,

num:=#

This statement will assign the value that the user enters for the variable.

- 3. While Comparison we need to keep in mind that,
  - I. NULL will never be TRUE or FALSE
  - II. NULL cannot be equal or unequal to other values
  - III. When a value in an expression is NULL, then the expression itself evaluates to NULL except for concatenation operator (||)

## 4. Declare

no1 integer; no2 integer; sum integer;

## Begin

dbms\_output.put\_line(sum);

End;

/

5. True

6. PL/SQL blocks are of two types:

1. Anonymous blocks: A PL/SQL blocks without header are known as anonymous blocks.

These blocks do not form the body of a procedure, function or triggers.

Example:

DECLARE

digit NUMBER(2);

sqr NUMBER(3);

BEGIN

digit:= &Number1; sqr:= digit \* digit; DBMS\_OUTPUT.PUT\_LINE('Square:' || sqr);

END;

2. N amed bl ocks: P L/SQL bl ocks with hea der or I abels ar e k nown as N amed blocks. Named b locks m ay e ither b e s ubprograms (procedures, f unctions, packages) or Triggers.

## Example:

FUNCTION squar (digit IN NUMBER)

RETURN NUMBER is sqr NUMBER(2);

BEGIN

sqr:= digit \* digit;

RETURN sqr;

END;

## **1.9ASSIGNMENT**

1. Define PL/SQL.

2. Discuss PL/SQL environment and block structure.

3. What is local and global variable access in PL/SQL block?

- 4. Discuss various advantages of PL/SQL.
- 5. Write a PLSQL code to check whether a number is prime or not.

## 1.10 FURTHER READING

- 1. SQL/PLSQL, The Programming Language of ORACLE, BPBPublication by Ivan.
- 2. Introduction to Database Systems, 4th Edition, C. J. Date, Narose Publishing.
- 3. https://way2tutorial.com/plsql/
- 4. https://www.guru99.com/pl-sql-first-program-helloworld.html

## Unit 2: Cursor 2

## **Unit Structure**

- 2.1. Learning Objectives
- 2.2. Introduction
- Cursor Execution Cycle 2.3.
- 2.4. Types of Cursor
- Cursor for Loop 2.5.
- 2.6. Parameterized Cursor
- Let Us Sum Up 2.7.
- Check Your Progress: Possible Answers 2.8.
- Assignments 2.9.
- 2.10. Further Reading

## 2.1 LEARNING OBJECTIVES & OUTCOMES

The objective of this unit is to make the students,

- To learn and understand Cursor and its execution cycle
- To define, declare and initialize Cursor to access data
- To learn and understand different types of Cursor
- To learn accessing Cursor through for loop

#### Outcome:

At the end of this unit,

- · Students will be able to declare, initialize and access Cursor
- Students will be able to declare Cursor and write a PL/SQL block to access Cursor data
- Students will be able to write implicit, explicit and parameterized Cursor

## **14.2 INTRODUCTION**

A cursor is a pointer to an area of memory, called a context area. The context area is allocated by oracle in order to process a SQL statement. The cursor allows PL/SQL to control what happens to the context area when a statement is processed. It can be used by user to process the output of a select statement that returns more than one row.

Oracle uses a work area to execute SQL commands and store processing information. PL/SQL allows us to access this area through a name using a Cursor. For the execution of every SQL s tatement c ertain area in m emory is allocated. This private SQL area is called c ontext area or Cursor. A cursor works as a handle or pointer into the context area.

When we declare a cursor, we get a pointer variable, which initially do esn't point anywhere. When the cursor is opened, memory is allocated and the cursor structure is created. The cursor variable will now points the cursor. When the cursor is closed the memory allocated for the cursor is released. Cursors allow the programmer to retrieve data from a table and perform actions on that data one row at a time.

## 2.3 CURSOR EXECUTION CYCLE

The important steps in the cursor execution cycle are OPEN, FETCH and CLOSE. A cursor execution cycle r efers to the stages which a cursor follows to process and execute the query. The phases of cursor execution cycle are listed below:



Figure 1: Cursor Execution Cycle

The activity carried out by the server in the key phases is:

## 1. OPEN Phase

In this phase,PGA memory is allocated for cursor processing, SELECT statement is parsed, Variable binding takes place, SELECT Query executes and f inally pointer moves to the first record.

## 2. FETCH Phase

In this phase, the record to which the record pointer points, is retrieved from the result set. The record pointer will move only in the forward direction. The FETCH phase lives until the last record is reached.

## 3. CLOSE Phase

After the last record of the result set is reached, cursor is closed and allocated memory will b e g arbage c ollected and r eturned b ack to S GA. If a n o pen c ursor is not c losed, oracle automatically closes it after the execution of its parent block.

## 2.4 Types of Cursor

There are two types of cursors.

- Implicit cursor
- Explicit cursor

## 2.4.1 IMPLICIT CURSORS

PL/SQL declares an implicit cursor for every DML command, queries it, which will return a single row. The name of the implicit cursor is SQL. We can directly use this cursor without any declaration.

For S QL quer ies which r eturns s ingle r ow, P L/SQL d eclares i mplicit c ursors. I mplicit cursors are simple SELECT statements and are written in the BEGIN block (executable phase) of the P L/SQL. Implicit cursors retrieve exactly one row. The most commonly raised exceptions are NO\_DATA\_FOUND or TOO\_MANY\_ROWS.

For Example:

• Select sname, ssalary into sna, ssa from salesman where sno = 542;

**Note:** sname and ssalary are columns of the table salesman and sna and ssa are the variables

used to store sname and ssalary fetched by the query.

Oracle implicitly opens a cursor to process each SQL statement not associated with an explicitly declared cursor. We can refer to this cursor using the name SQL.

We cannot us e the OPEN, FETCH, and CLOSE statements with SQL cursor. But, we can us e cursor at tributes to get information about the most recently executed SQL statement.

The following code shows how to us e implicit cursor to know whether the most recent UPDATE has updated any rows or not.

DECLARE	
BEGIN	
update	
if SQL%NOTFOUND then	
statements;	
end if;	
END;	

NOTFOUND is an at tribute of implicit cursor that will returns true if previous UPDATE command has not affected any row.

#### > Implicit Cursor Attributes

Cursor attributes do not have the similar meaning for both explicit and implicit cursors. The following are the attributes of implicit cursor.

- 1. NOTFOUND: It returns true, if previous DML operation didn't affect any row.
- 2. FOUND: It returns true, if previous DML operation affected any row.
- 3. ROWCOUNT: It r eturns num ber of r ows af fected b y t he m ost r ecent D ML operation.

The following code shows how to use ROWCOUNT attribute with implicit cursor to know how many rows were updated with most recent UPDATE command.

BEGIN	
	update salesman set scity = "Ahmedabad" where ssalary > 45;
	/* if more than 3 rows are effected then rollback updation */
	if SQL%ROWCOUNT > 3 then
	rollback;
	else
	commit;
	end if;
END;	

## 2.4.2. EXPLICIT CURSOR

PL/SQL's implicit c ursor c an handle o nly single-row q ueries. But, if you n eed to s elect more than o ne row using s elect then you have to use explicit c ursor. The set of rows fetched by a query is called active set. Select command in PL/SQL block will retrieve only on e row. If s elect c ommand retrieves no row then NO\_DATA\_FOUND e xception will be raised. If select retrieves more than one row then TOO\_MANY\_ROWS exception occurs.

A select command will succeed only when it retrieves a single row. Select command copies the values of columns that it retrieved into variables. If multiple rows are

retrieved then multiple values for each column will be copied to a single variable and that will create the problem.

#### Example:

DECLARE	
	ssid varchar2(5);
	snam varchar2(5);
	sdpt varchar2(5);
BEGIN	N Contraction of the second
	select scode, sname, sdept into ssid, snam, sdpt
	from salesman where ssalary > 45;
END;	

Select c ommand in the ab ove c ode will r aise T OO\_MANY\_ROWS exception if m ore than one salesman is having salary more than 45.

An explicit c ursor is the solution to the problem. A c ursor c an s tore a c ollection of records retrieved by a query. Then it allows us to fetch one record from cursor at a time and thereby enabling to process all the records in the cursor.

## Handling Explicit Cursor

Explicit c ursor is a nam e us ed t o r efer to a n ar ea w here you c an p lace m ultiple r ows retrieved b y s elect. W e m ust us e an ex plicit c ursor w henever w e h ave t o us e a m ulti-row query in PL/SQL.

The following are the steps required to create and use an explicit cursor:

- 1. Declare the cursor in Declare section
- 2. Open the cursor using open statement in Executable part
- 3. Fetch one row at a time using fetch statement.
- 4. Close the cursor after all the records in the cursor are fetched and processed by using close.

Processing multiple rows is same as file handling. In file processing we need to op en the file, process records and then close the file. Similarly user-defined explicit cursor needs to be ope ned, fetch and read the rows, after which it is closed. Like how file

pointer marks current position in file processing, cursor marks the current position in the active set.

## > Declaring a Cursor

A c ursor i s dec lared in D eclare s ection using c ursor s tatement. At t he t ime of declaration the

name of the cursor and the associated select statement are mentioned.

#### Syntax:

CURSOR cursor\_name [(parameter[, parameter]...)]

IS select\_statement

[FOR UPDATE [OF column, column, ...];

The following code shows how to declare a cursor.

#### DECLARE

cursor sales\_data is select scode, sname, sdept from salesman;

BEGIN

.....

END;

sales\_data is the name of the cursor, which will be populated with the rows retrieved by the

given select at the time of opening the cursor.

## Opening a Cursor

OPEN statement is used to execute the select command associated with the cursor and place

the rows retrieved by the query into cursor.

OPEN cursor\_name [(input\_arguments)];

Cursor\_name is the name of the cursor that is to be opened.

Input\_arguments are the values to be passed to the parameters of the cursor.

The following statement opens the cursor sales\_data and places the rows retrieved by the

query into the cursor.

## DECLARE cursor sales\_data is select scode, sname, sdept from salesman;

BEGIN

open sales\_data;

END;

## Fetching Rows

Once cursor is opened using op en statement, cursor has a s et of rows, which can be fetched using fetch statement. Fetch statement takes the data of the current row in the cursor and copies the values of the columns into variables given after INTO keyword.

FETCH cursor\_name INTO variable-1, variable-2, . . .;

For each column in the cursor there should be a corresponding variable in FETCH statement. We also need to make sure that the data types of variables and corresponding columns are matching.

The following code demonstrates how to fetch and copy data from current row of the cursor to variables given after INTO keyword.

DECLARE	
(	Cursor sales_data is
S	select scode, sname, sdept
f	from salesman;
۱. ۱	v_scode salesman.scode%type;
۱. ۱	v_sname salesman.sname%type;
۱. ۱	v_dept salesman.sdept%type;
BEGIN	
C	open sales_data;
ŀ	оор
	fetch sales_data into v_scode, v_sname, v_dept;

END;

FETCH statement is used inside the loop to repeatedly fetch rows from the cursor. The process of fetching will stop when all the rows of the cursor are fetched (reached end of cursor). T he f ollowing c ode s hows h ow t o exit c ursor w hen c ursor is c ompletely processed.

Loop

fetch sales\_data into v\_scode, v\_sname, v\_sdept; exit when sales\_data%notfound;

end loop;

NOTFOUND attribute of the c ursor r eturns T RUE when previous F ETCH do esn't successfully

read a row from cursor.

#### > Closing a Cursor

Close statement is used to close cursor after the cursor is processed. Closing a cursor will release the resources associated with cursor.

CLOSE cursor\_name;

The following code closes sales\_data cursor:

DECLARE	
BEGIN	
	open
	Іоор
	end loop;
close	sales_data;
END;	

## > Explicit Cursor Attributes

Cursor at tributes al low us er t o r etrieve i nformation r egarding c ursor. For e xample, w e can get the num ber of r ows fetched s o far from a c ursor us ing R OWCOUNT at tribute. We can also determine whether a row is fetched or not using FOUND attribute. The following syntax is used to access cursor attributes:

#### cursor\_name%Attribute

Every cursor defined by the user has 4 attributes. When appended to the cursor name these attributes allows the user to access important information about the execution of a multirow query.

The attributes are:

- 1. %NOTFOUND: It is a B oolean attribute, which r eturns true, if the last f etch is failed. i.e. when there are no rows left in the cursor to fetch.
- 2. %FOUND: Boolean variable, which returns true if the last fetch is succeeded.
- 3. %ROWCOUNT: It's a numeric attribute, which returns number of rows fetched by the cursor so far.
- 4. %ISOPEN: A B oolean variable, w hich r eturns t rue i f t he c ursor i s ope ned otherwise returns false.

The following c ode s hows c ursor at tributes with explicit c ursors. Attribute NOTFOUND returns true if previous FETCH statement couldn't fetch any row.

```
LOOP
fetch sales_data into s_scode, s_dept;
/* exit loop if previous FETCH failed */
exit when sales_data%NOTFOUND;
/* process the record fetched */
END LOOP;
```

In the above code E XIT is executed when NOTFOUND attribute of cursor sales\_data returns TRUE.

## > Using Cursor with LOOP

LOOP can be used to access the cursor values as shown in the following code.

## Example:

```
DECLARE

Lname varchar2(10);

Sal number(8,2);

CURSOR C1 IS Select Last_Name, Salary from Employee;

BEGIN

Open C1;

dbms_output.put_line('Last_Name'||' '||'Salary');

If C1%isopen then

LOOP

Fetch C1 into Lname, Sal;

dbms_output.put_line(Lname||' '||Sal);

END LOOP;

END IF;

END;

/
```

Fetch is us ed twice in the below e xample us ing W hile Loop to m ake %FOUND available.

## Example:

DECLARE Cursor C1 is

SELECT ID, Last\_Name, city FROM Employee;

Num Employee.ID%type;

Nam Employee.Last\_Name%type;

Town Employee.city%type;

Begin

Open C1;

Fetch C1 into Num, Nam, Town;

while C1%found loop

dbms_output.put_line('Row Number '  C1%rowcount    ' is: '   Num  ' '  Nam  '
'  Town);
Fetch C1 into Num, Nam, Town;
End loop;
Close C1;
End;
1

The above code will display the cursor C1 records with Employee Id, Name and city.

## 2.5 CURSOR FOR LOOP

The cursor for Loop can be used to process multiple records. There are two benefits with cursor for Loop.

- 1. It implicitly declares a %ROWTYPE variable.
- Cursor for loop itself op ens a cursor, read records and then closes the cursor automatically. S o, O pen, F etch and C lose s tatements are not necessary in it. To process a cursor, we can use cursor F OR loop to a utomate the following steps.
- Opening cursor
- Fetching rows from the cursor
- Terminating loop when all rows in the cursor are fetched
- Closing cursor

The following is the syntax of cursor for loop. This for loop is specifically meant to process cursors.

```
FOR rowtype_variable IN cursor_name
LOOP
Statements;
END LOOP;
```

rowtype\_variable is automatically declared by cursor for loop. It is of ROWTYPE of the cursor. It h as c olumns of the cursor as fields. T hese fields c an be accessed us ing rowtype\_variable.fieldname.

## Example:

DECLARE		
CUR	SOR C1 IS Select Last_Name, Salary from Employee;	
BEGIN		
For E	EMP_REC in C1	
LOO	)P	
	dbms_output.put_line(EMP_REC.Last_name  '	
	'  EMP_REC.Salary);	
END	LOOP;	
END;		
/		

The above code will display the cursor C1 records with Employee Last Name and their salary. emp\_rec is au tomatically created variable of % ROWTYPE. We have not used Open, Fetch and Close in the above example as cursor for loop does it automatically. Using Implicit for Loop the above example can be rewritten as shown below:

## Example:

```
BEGIN
For EMP_REC in (Select Last_Name, Salary from Employee)
LOOP
dbms_output.put_line(EMP_REC.Last_name||'
'||EMP_REC.Salary);
END LOOP;
END;
```

## 2.6 Parameterized Cursor

Parameterized Cursor passes the parameters into a cursor and uses them in the query. PL/SQL parameterized cursor define only datatype of parameter and doesn't require to define it's length. A cursor FOR loop automatically opens the cursor to which it refers, so our program doesn't require opening that cursor inside the loop.

Syntax: The syntax for a cursor with parameters in PL/SQL is:

```
CURSOR cursor_name (parameter_list)
```

IS

SELECT\_statement;

#### Example:

DECLARE	
Cu	rsor C1(num number) is select * from Employee
wh	ere ID = num;
em	p Employee%rowtype;
BEGIN	
lf C1	%lsopen Then
Clos	e C1;
End	lf;
(	Open C1(5);
FO	R emp IN C1(5) LOOP
dbr	ms_output.put_line('EMP_NUM: '  emp.ID);
dbr	ms_output.put_line('First_Name: '  emp.First_Name);
dbr	ms_output.put_line('Last_Name: '  emp.Last_Name);
dbr	ms_output.put_line('EMP_Salary:'∥emp.Salary);
EN	ID Loop;
CLOSE C	\$1;
END;	
/	

## > Check Your Progress

1) What is a cursor? Why Cursor is required?

2) Write the PL/SQL Statements used in cursor processing.

3) Write the cursor attributes used in PL/SQL.

4) Check following code and tell what will happen after commit statement?

```
Cursor C1 is
Select empno,
ename from emp;
Begin
open C1;
loop
Fetch C1 into
eno. ename;
Exit When
C1 %notfound;-----
commit;
end loop;
end;
```

5) What is the use of WHERE CURRENT OF clause in cursors?

.....

.....

## 2.7SUMMARY

In this unit we have learnt that the major task of a cursor is to fetch data, one row at a time, from the result s et. Cursors are us ed whenever the us er wants to manipulate or update records in a s ingleton fashion or in a row by row manner, in a d atabase table. The information stored in the Cursor is known as Active Data Set. Cursors are opened in predefined area of O racle's DBMS in the main memory s et, where the cursors are opened. We have a lso discussed cursor with for loop and p arameter. Cursor plays an important role in accessing data one row at a time unlike sql commands.

## 2.8 CHECK YOUR PROGRESS: POSSIBLE ANSWERS

## Check Your Progress

1. Cursor is a named private SQL area from where we can access information. Cursors needs to process rows individually for queries returning multiple rows.

2. DECLARE CURSOR cursor name, OPEN cursor name, FETCH cursor name INTO or Record types, CLOSE cursor name.

3. Cursor attributes are;

I. %ISOPEN: It is used to check whether cursor is open or not.

II. % ROWCOUNT : It returns the number of rows fetched / updated / deleted.

III. % FOUND : It is used to check whether cursor has fetched any row. Returns true if rows are fetched.

IV. % NOT FOUND : It is used to check whether cursor h as fetched a ny row. Returns true if no rows are fetched.

These attributes are processed with SQL for Implicit Cursors and with Cursor name for Explicit Cursors.

4. In the above code the cursor is having query SELECT, so does not get closed even after Commit / Rollback.

If, the cursor is having query as SELECT .... FOR UPDATE then it gets closed after Commit / Rollback.

5. In cursor, WHERE CURRENT OF clause in an Update, Delete statement refers to the latest row retrieved from a cursor.

## 2.9 ASSIGNMENTS

1. Define Cursor. Explain Cursor Cycle.

2. Discuss the types of cursor with proper syntax.

3. How do we use While Loop and For Loop in Cursor? Discuss with example.

4. Explain parameterized Cursor with example.

5. Differentiate Cursor declared in a procedure and Cursor declared in a package specification.

6. What are PL/SQL cursor exceptions?

## 2. 10 FURTHER READING

1. Advanced PL/SQL Programming: The Definitive Reference by Boobal Ganesan

2. SQL/PLSQL, The Programming Language of ORACLE, BPBPublication by Ivan.

3. Introduction to Database Systems, 4th Edition, C. J. Date, Narose Publishing.

# Unit 3: Locking 3

## **Unit Structure**

- 3.1. Learning Objectives
- 3.2. Introduction
- 3.3. Locking Strategy
- 3.4. Types of Lock
- Lock Table 3.5.
- 3.6. Let Us Sum Up
- Check Your Progress: Possible Answers 3.7.
- Assignments 3.8.
- Further Reading 3.9.
# **3.1 LEARNING OBJECTIVES & OUTCOMES**

The objective of this unit is to make the students,

- To learn and understand database lock
- To learn the benefits of locking any database objects
- To learn and understand different modes of locks
- To learn and understand different types of locks

#### Outcome:

At the end of this unit,

- Students will be able to define database lock
- · Students will be able to lock table with different locking mode

# **3.2 INTRODUCTION**

Oracle D atabase provides da ta concurrency, c onsistency a nd i ntegrity am ong transactions through a locking mechanism. The locks are performed automatically and require no user interaction. It is directly associated with a session. Database Locks are mechanisms t hat pr event des tructive interaction b etween transactions accessing t he shared r esource or o bjects. T hese r esources c an be t ables, dat a r ows, dat a blocks, cached items, connections and entire systems.

There ar e m any types of I ocks t hat c an oc cur s uch s hared I ocks, e xclusive I ocks, transaction I ocks, D MLI ocks, and bac kup-recovery I ocks. O racle database automatically obt ains r equired I ocks when p erforming SQL transactions. For e xample, before a session is per mitted to u pdate dat a, the s ession m ust first I ock the dat a. T he lock empowers the session exclusive control over the data so that no other transaction can update the locked data until the lock is released.

# 3.3 Locking Strategy

The d atabase m aintains different t ypes of I ocks bas ed on the operation t hat ho ld t he lock. Loc ks h ave direct i mpact on t he i nteraction of r ead a nd w rite op eration. T he following r ules summarize t he I ocking be haviour of or acle d atabase f or r eads a nd writes:

- A r ow is locked w henever m odified by a write op eration. When a transaction updates one row, the transaction acquires a lock for this row only. The contention can be minimized by locking table data at the row level.
- When one t ransaction is up dating a row, then a row lock prevents a different transaction from updating the same row concurrently.
- A read operation never blocks a write operation. A reading of a row does not lock that row, a write operation can update this row. The only exception is a SELECT ... FOR UPDATE statement that will lock the row being read.
- A write o peration nev er blocks a r ead oper ation. When a r ow is being changed by a write transaction, the database applies undo data to provide readers with a consistent view of the row data.

## 3.3.1. LOCK MODES

Following table describe various types of locking mode with their meaning.

Lock Mode	Meaning
EXCLUSIVE	It a llows a SELECT query on the locked table, all other operations (i.e. Update, Delete etc.) are prohibited to other transactions.
SHARE	It allows concurrent queries, but updates are prohibited for all transactions.

Lock Mode	Meaning
ROW SHARE	It allows concurrent access to the table, but no other users can acquire an exclusive lock on the table.
ROW EXCLUSIVE	It is essentially the same as ROW SHARE but also prevents locking in SHARE mode.
SHARE ROW	It locks the entire table; queries are allowed but no other transaction can acquire any lock on the table.

# 3.4 Types of Lock

Oracle s erver implicitly acquires a lock s ituation if a transaction is do ne on the s ame table in different sessions. This default locking technique is called implicit or automatic locking.

In Explicit Locking, a table or partition can be locked using the LOCK TABLE statement in on e of t he earlier specified modes. It is better to acquire an Explicit Locking rather than relying on the implicit locking done by default by the Oracle server.

Generally, the database uses two types of locks:

# **3.4.1 EXCLUSIVE LOCKS**

In Exclusive locks only one lock can be obtained on an object such as a row or a table. This locking mode prevents the as sociated resource from being shared. A transaction acquires an exclusive lock when it updates data. The first transaction who had acquired a lock to resource exclusively is the only transaction that can modify the resource until the exclusive lock is released.

#### 15.3.2. Shared locks

In Shared I ocks m any s hare I ocks c an be obtained o n a s ingle ob ject. T his I ocking mode al lows the as sociated r esource t o be s hared based on the op erations involved.

Multiple users reading data can share the same data, acquiring share locks to prevent simultaneous access by a write transaction looking for an exclusive lock.

Oracle database does not allow a field level locking. It gives the Row level, Page level and Table level locking mechanism.

I. Row Level locking

In row-level locking, any specific row or rows in a table can be locked (unlocked rows will be av ailable f or upd ates or del etes). The locked rows c an be updat ed only by the process that initiated the locking.

II. Page Level locking

A page level locking is used when the Where clause evaluates to a set of data.

III. Table Level locking

In table-level locking, the whole table is locked against any kind of DML actions from

another transaction. Once a given transaction has locked a table, that transaction

is the

only one that can change rows in the table.

# 3.5 LOCK TABLE

To lock any database table following syntax can be used.

#### Syntax:

• LOCK TABLE tables IN lock\_mode MODE [ WAIT [, integer] | NOWAIT ];

Where,

- Tables is a A comma-delimited list of tables,
- lock\_mode is a previously discussed any lock mode,
- WAIT specifies that the da tabase will wait for a specific number of seconds as mentioned by integer to acquire a DML lock.
- NOWAIT indicates that the database should not wait for a lock to be released.

#### Example

Let's look at below code of how to use the LOCK TABLE statement.

For example:

#### • LOCK TABLE Student IN SHARE MODE NOWAIT;

This code will lock the Student table in SHARE MODE and not wait for a lock to be released.

#### • Lock table Student IN Exclusive Mode NOWAIT;

Above code will lock the Student table in EXCLUSIVE MODE and not wait for a lock to be released.

#### > Check Your Progress

1) What are LOCKS?

.

.

2) Write two important database goals of Locking.

3) Write different types of locks available in database.

.....

4)What will happen if another session tries to update the locked data?

.....

# 3.6LET US SUM UP

Locking is a m echanism to ensure dat a consistency, concurrency and integrity while allowing maximum simultaneous access to objects. It is used to implement concurrency control when multiple users try to manipulate table data at the same time. By learning locking we can say that it helps in avoiding deadlock conditions and also avoids clashes in ac quiring the database resources. Generally a user does not need to worry about locking, as R DBMS automatically selects the most appropriate lock for a particular transaction.

# 3.7CHECK YOUR PROGRESS: POSSIBLE ANSWERS

#### Check Your Progress

- Locks ar e t echniques us ed t o pr event destructive interaction b etween users accessing database objects. ORACLE uses locks to control concurrent access to data.
- 2. I. Consistency: It ensures that the data o bjects a us er is reading or changing is not changed (by other users) until the user is finished with the data.

II. Integrity: It ensures that the da tabase's data object and structures reflect all changes made to them in the correct order.

- 3. a. Data Locks (DML)
  - b. Dictionary Locks (DDL)
  - c. Internal Locks and Latches

- d. Distributed Locks
- e. Parallel Cache Management Locks
- 4. Suppose database session A tries to update some data that is already locked by database

session B. Here, session A will remain in lock wait state, and session A will be stopped from making any progress with any SQL transaction that it's executing. We can say that session A will be blocked until session B releases the lock on that data.

# 3.8ASSIGNMENTS

- 1. Define Lock. Explain Locking benefits.
- 2. Discuss different types of locking with example.
- 3. Explain various modes of lock.

# **3.9FURTHER READING**

- 1. Advanced PL/SQL Programming: The Definitive Reference by Boobal Ganesan
- 2. SQL/PLSQL, The ProgrammingLanguage of ORACLE, BPBPublication by Ivan.
- 3. Introduction to Database Systems, 4th Edition, C. J. Date, Narose Publishing.

# 4

# Unit 4: Exception Handling

# **Unit Structure**

- 4.1. Learning Objectives
- 4.2. Introduction
- 4.3. User-defined Exceptions
- 4.4. Predefined (Named) Exceptions
- 4.5. SQLCODE and SQLERRM
- 4.6. PRAGMA Exception
- 4.7. Let Us Sum Up
- 4.8. Check Your Progress: Possible Answers
- 4.9. Assignments
- 4.10. Further Reading

# 4.1 LEARNING OBJECTIVES & OUTCOMES

The objective of this unit is to make the students,

- To learn and understand Exception
- To define and understand different types of Exception
- To learn and understand Exception handling

#### Outcome:

At the end of this unit,

- Students will be able to write exception handling block
- Students will be able to declare user defined exception
- · Students will be able to use pre-defined exception for different types of errors
- Students will be able to write pragma exception

# 4.2INTRODUCTION

An Exception is an error situation or abnormal condition, which arises during program execution. When an error takes place exception is raised, normal execution is stopped and control transfers to exception handling block. Exception handlers are block of codes written to han dle the exception. The exceptions can be system-defined or pre-defined and User-defined exception. When PL/SQL raises a predefined exception, the program is terminated by displaying error message. But if the program is supposed to h andle exception raised by PL/SQL then we have to use Exception Handling part of the block. Control is transferred to exception handling part whenever an exception oc curs. After the exception h andler completes ex ecution, control is transferred to n ext statement in the enclosing block. If there is no enclosing block then control returns to H ost (from where we ran the PL/SQL block).

Syntax of exception handling is:

WHEN exception-1 [or exception -2] ... THEN

statements;

[WHEN exception-3 [or exception-4] ... THEN

# statements; ] ... [WHEN OTHERS THEN statements; ]

exception-1, exception-2 are exceptions that are to be h andled. These exceptions are either pre-defined exceptions or us er-defined exceptions. If an exception is raised but not han dled by exception handling p art then PL/SQL block is terminated by displaying an error message related to the exception.

The biggest advantage of exception handling is that it improves readability and reliability of the code. Errors from many statements of code can be handles with a single handler. Instead of checking for an error at every point we can just add an exception handler to handle the exception when raised.

# **4.3 USER-DEFINED EXCEPTIONS**

AU ser-defined e xception i s an ex ception defined b y t he pr ogrammer. U ser-defined exceptions are declared in the declaration s ection with their type as exception. They must be r aised explicitly us ing R AISE C ommand, w hile pr e-defined ex ceptions ar e raised implicitly. R AISE statement c an a lso be us ed t o raise internal exceptions. We names with specific Oracle can map exception errors using the EXCEPTION INIT Pragma. We can a lso as sign a number a nd description to the exception using RAISE APPLICATION ERROR.

#### Declaring Exception:

```
DECLARE
myexception EXCEPTION;
BEGIN
Raising Exception:
BEGIN
RAISE myexception;
Handling Exception:
BEGIN
EXCEPTION
```

WHEN myexception THEN Statements;

END;

#### Note:

- An Exception cannot be declared twice in the same block.
- Exceptions declared in a block are considered as local to that block and global to its sub-

blocks.

 An enclosing block cannot access Exceptions declared in its sub-block. While it is possible for a sub-block to refer its enclosing Exceptions.

The f ollowing example d emonstrates t he us e of User-defined E xception us ing Procedure:

```
Create or Replace Procedure Raise_Exception (Input NUMBER) IS
```

Evenno\_Exception EXCEPTION;

Oddno\_Exception EXCEPTION;

Begin

```
IF MOD(Input, 2) = 1 THEN
```

RAISE Oddno\_Exception;

ELSE

```
RAISE Evenno_Exception;
```

END IF;

EXCEPTION

WHEN Evenno\_Exception THEN

```
dbms_output.put_line(TO_CHAR(Input) ||' is Even Number');
```

WHEN Oddno\_Exception THEN

```
dbms_output.put_line(TO_CHAR(Input) ||' is Odd Number');
```

End Raise\_Exception;

/

Now execute the procedure with following command and check out the output as shown below.

exec Raise\_Exception(5);
 5 is odd Number

# 4.3.1 RERAISING AN EXCEPTION

When we want an exception to be handled in the current block as well in its enclosing block t hen w e ne ed t o use R AISE s tatement w ithout a n ex ception nam e. RAISE command c an al so be us ed t o r eraise a n ex ception s o t hat t he c urrent e xception is propagated to outer block. Current exception will be raised again if a sub block executes RAISE statement without specifying exception name in exception handler. In the below example, the exception ZERO\_DIVIDE is logged into a table before it is re-raised to the user or to the application.

Note: RAISE statement without exception name is valid only in exception handler.

CLARE
um NUMBER;
EGIN
num := 5/0;
EXCEPTION
WHEN zero_divide THEN
INSERT INTO log_details VALUES (log_seq.nextval, SQLCODE   ' '
errm);
RAISE;
ND;

## 4.3.2 RAISE APPLICATION ERROR

To display our own error messages we can use the built in RAISE\_APPLICATION\_ERROR. It will display the error message in the same way as Oracle errors. We should use a negative number between -20000 to -20999 for the error\_number and the error message should not exceed 512 characters.

#### Syntax:

 RAISE\_APPLICATION\_ERROR(<error\_number>, <error\_message>, <TRUE |</td>

 FALSE>);

 Where,

 error\_number -20000 to -20999

 error\_message Varchar2(2048)

 TRUE
 add to error stack

 FALSE
 replace error stack (the default)

Let's try to understand with following example.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE Raise application Exception (Input NUMBER)
IS
      evenno exception EXCEPTION;
      oddno_exception EXCEPTION;
BEGIN
      IF MOD(Input, 2) = 1 THEN
       RAISE oddno exception;
      ELSE
       RAISE evenno exception;
      END IF;
     EXCEPTION
      WHEN evenno exception THEN
       RAISE APPLICATION ERROR(-20001, 'Even Number Entered');
      WHEN oddno_exception THEN
       RAISE APPLICATION ERROR(-20999, 'Odd Number Entered');
END Raise application Exception;
1
```

Execute the above procedure with following command and check the output. It will display error message with error number.

• Exec Raise\_application\_Exception(5);

# 4.4 Predefined (Named) Exceptions

Predefined e xception is r aised a utomatically w henever t here is a v iolation of O racle coding r ules. P L/SQL has de fined c ertain c ommon errors and gi ven names t o t hese errors, which are called as predefined exceptions. Each exception has a corresponding Oracle er ror c ode. P redefined exceptions ex amples ar e t hose I ike ZERO\_DIVIDE, which is r aised automatically w hen w e t ry t o di vide a num ber by z ero. O ther bu ilt-in exceptions ar e gi ven b elow. W e c an handl e une xpected O racle er rors us ing O THERS handler. It can handle all raised exceptions that are not handled by any other handler. It must al ways be w ritten as the I ast han dler in e xception b lock. P redefined e xception handlers are declared globally in package Standard. We don't need to define them.

#### Structure of Error Handling:

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE <procedure\_name> IS BEGIN NULL; EXCEPTION WHEN <named\_exception> THEN -- handle identified exception WHEN <named\_exception> THEN -- handle identified exception WHEN OTHERS THEN -- handle any exceptions not previously handled END; /

#### Example of ZERO\_DIVIDE Exception:

```
Declare
num number := 50;
div number := 0;
```

```
result number;
```

```
begin
  result := num / div;
  dbms_output.put_line('result: '||result);
exception
  when zero_divide then
  dbms_output.put_line('DIVIDE by ZERO: '||sqlerrm);
end;
/
```

#### Example of NO\_DATA\_FOUND Exception:

The below program will show the name and address of a salesman as result whose ID is matches. But there is no salesman with ID 10 in our record, so the program raises the run-time exception NO\_DATA\_FOUND, which is captured in EXCEPTION block.

```
DECLARE
 s id salesman.id%type := 10;
 s name salesman.name%type;
 s_addr salesman.address%type;
BEGIN
 SELECT name, address INTO s_name, s_addr
 FROM salesman
 WHERE id = s id;
DBMS OUTPUT.PUT LINE ('Name: '|| s name);
DBMS OUTPUT.PUT LINE ('Address: ' || s addr);
EXCEPTION
 WHEN no_data_found THEN
   dbms output.put line('No such Salesman exists!');
 WHEN others THEN
   dbms output.put line('There is problem");
END;
1
```

The **DUP\_VAL\_ON\_INDEX** exception is raised when a SQL statement tries to create a duplicate v alue i n a c olumn on w hich pr imary k ey or uni que c onstraints ar e def ined. Following example demonstrates the use of DUP\_VAL\_ON\_INDEX exception.

BEGIN
Insert into salesman (id) values(1);
EXCEPTION
When dup_val_on_index then
dbms_output.put_line('Duplicate value on an index');
END;
/

More than one Exception can be written in a single handler as shown below.

EXCEPTION
When NO DATA FOUND or TOO MANY ROWS then
Chatana anta i
Statements;
END;

#### Invalid Cursor Exception

Here we will try to check the exception associated with Cursor access. Let's examine the below example.

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE InvalidCursor_exception IS	
CURSOR CurExcp is	
SELECT * FROM salesman;	

Cur\_Record CurExcp%rowtype;

BEGIN

LOOP

-- note the cursor was not opened before the FETCH

FETCH CurExcp INTO Cur\_Record;

EXIT WHEN CurExcp%notfound;

NULL; END LOOP; EXCEPTION WHEN INVALID\_CURSOR THEN dbms\_output.put\_line('Invalid Cursor State exception Raised'); WHEN OTHERS THEN dbms\_output.put\_line('Some Other Problem'); END InvalidCursor\_exception;

Execute the above procedure and check the output.

/

The following table shows some important predefined exception with their meaning and error code.

Exception Name	Error	Description
CASE_NOT_FOUND	ORA- 06592	None of the choices in the WHEN clauses of a CASE statement is selected and there is no ELSE clause.
CURSOR_ALREADY_OPEN	ORA- 06511	Raised when tried to open a cursor that was already open
DUP_VAL_ON_INDEX	ORA- 00001	Raised when an attempt to insert or update a record in violation of a primary key or unique constraint is made
INVALID_CURSOR	ORA- 01001	Raised when the cursor is not open, or not valid in the context in which it is being called.
INVALID_NUMBER	ORA- 01722	Raised when it isn't a number
LOGIN_DENIED	ORA- 01017	Invalid name and/or password for the instance.

		Raised when the SELECT statement
	ORA-	returned no rows or referenced a deleted
	01403	element in a nested table or referenced an
		initialized element in an Index-By table.
	ORA-	Raised when database connection lost
	01012	
	ORA-	Raised when internal PL/SOL error
PRUGRAM_ERRUR	06501	Raised when miernal P L/SQL en or.
ROWITZE MISMATCH	ORA-	Raised when the rowtype does not match
	06504	the values being fetched or assigned to it.
	ORA-	Raised when a hardware problem either
STORAGE_ERROR	06500	RAM or disk drive occurs.
	ORA- 06533	Raised when reference to a nested table or
SUBSCRIPT_BEYOND_COUNT		varray index higher than the number of
		elements in the collection.
	ORA- 06532	Raised when reference to a nested table or
SUBSCRIPT_OUTSIDE_LIMIT		varray index outside the declared range
		(such as -1).
TIMEOUT ON RESOURCE	ORA-	Raised when the activity took too long and
	00051	timed out.
	ORA- 01422	Raised when the SQL INTO statement
TOO_MANY_ROWS		brought back more than one value or row
		(only one is allowed).
	ORA-	Raised when an attempt is made to divide a
	01476	number by zero.

# 4.5 SQLCODE AND SQLERRM

In W HEN O THERS part of exception h andler, we can use SQLCODE and SQLERRM functions to r etrieve the error num ber and error message respectively. There is no predefined exception for every oracle errors.

By using these two functions we can get the error code and error message of the most recently oc curred er ror. The f ollowing ex ample d emonstrates how t o us e S QLCODE and S QLERRM functions. To un derstand this we will create a table named s ubject as follows.

 Create t able s ubject(subcode v archar2(2) pr imary k ey no t nul l, s ubname varchar2(20));

After creating Table insert few records as shown below. Here we have to define subject code primary key and not null.

- Insert into subject values('A','Java');
- Insert into subject values('B','DBMS');
- Insert into subject values('C','RDBMS');
- Insert into subject values('D','C++');

Now write and execute following code and check the output.

#### Example:

	Declare
	newscode varchar2(5) := null;
	begin
	update subject set subcode = newscode where subcode = 'C';
	exception
	when dup_val_on_index then
	dbms_output.put_line('Duplicate subject code');
	when others then
	dbms_output.put_line(sqlerrm);
end;	
/	

If you run the above program, it will show cannot update ('SYSTEM','Subject','subcode') to null with error code ORA-01407.

The above output is generated when others part of exception handling block executes. SQLERRM r eturns the error m essage of the most recent error occurred. As we are trying to s et S CODE, which is a not null c olumn to N ULL value, P L/SQL r aises an exception. But as the error (-01407) is not as sociated with a ny predefined exception, WHEN OTHERS part of exception handling part is executed.

# 4.6 PRAGMA EXCEPTION

PRAGMA EXCEPTION\_INIT allows user to map ORA- error and it can be raised in PL/SQL code. The SQL Error number passed in "EXCEPTION\_INIT" is the same as error code except for "NO\_DATA\_FOUND" ORA-01403 which is 100.

#### Example:

Declare
no_rows_found exception;
pragma exception_init(no_rows_found, 100);
Begin
raise no_rows_found;
End;
/

Execute above code and check the output.

#### Example with too many rows:

Declare
oo_many_rows exception;
Pragma exception_init(too_many_rows, -1422);
Begin
raise too_many_rows;
End;
,

Execute above code and check the output.

Whenever O racle er ror -1407 oc curs, N ULL\_VALUE\_ERROR exception is raised by PL/SQL. The following example will illustrate important points related to associating an Oracle error with a user-defined exception.

Here we will consider the previously created Subject table and s ame upda te query for assigning null value to a not null column.

#### Example:

peclare
null_value_error Exception;
Pragma Exception_init(null_value_error, -1407);
newscode varchar2(5) := null;
egin
update subject set subcode = newscode where subcode = 'C';
Exception
When null_value_error Then
dbms_output.put_line('User is trying to set null value to a not null column');
nd;

Execute above code and check the output.

#### > Check Your Progress

1) What is an Exception? State the types of Exception.

2) What do you mean by PRAGMA keyword?

# .....

3) What is Raise\_application\_error?

.....

4) What is the benefit of OTHERS exception handler?

.....

.....

5) What is PRAGMA EXECPTION\_INIT? Explain its use?

.....

# 4.7 LET US SUM UP

A P L/SQL block is successful if it exits without raising any exceptions or raises an exception b ut the exception is han dled in the block's exception han dling p art. S ame way, A PL/SQL block is unsuccessful if it exits with an unhandled exception means the executable part raises a nexception (either predefined or us er-defined) and it is not handled in the block's exception handler. In this unit we have discussed the exception and exception handling mechanism using predefined and user defined exception. W e have al so di scussed R AISE\_APPLICATION\_ERROR procedure t o g enerate a us er-defined error.

# 4.8CHECK YOUR PROGRESS: POSSIBLE ANSWERS

#### Check Your Progress

1. Exception is an error and Exception handling is the error handling part of PL/SQL block. The types of Exception are Predefined and user\_defined. Some of Predefined exceptions are:

• CURSOR\_ALREADY\_OPEN

- DUP\_VAL\_ON\_INDEX
- NO\_DATA\_FOUND
- TOO\_MANY\_ROWS
- INVALID\_CURSOR
- INVALID\_NUMBER
- LOGON\_DENIED
- NOT\_LOGGED\_ON
- PROGRAM-ERROR
- STORAGE\_ERROR
- TIMEOUT\_ON\_RESOURCE
- VALUE\_ERROR
- ZERO\_DIVIDE
- OTHERS.

2. The PRAGMA keyword specifies that the statement is a compiler directive, which is not processed when the PL/SQL block is executed. It is a pseudo-code that tells the compiler to interpret all the oc currences of exception name within the block with the associated oracle server number.

3. R aise\_application\_error is a pr ocedure of pac kage D BMS\_STANDARD. It allows issuing an user\_defined error messages from stored sub-program or database trigger.

4. The OTHERS exception handler makes sure that no exception goes unhandled and the program terminates successfully.

5. The PRAGMA EXECPTION\_INIT informs the complier to associate an exception with an oracle error to get an error message of a specific oracle error.

For example, PRAGMA EXCEPTION\_INIT (exception name, oracle error number)

# **4.9ASSIGNMENT**

1. What is Exception? How do we handle Exception in PL/SQL?

- 2. Explain User defined exception in PL/SQL.
- 3. Write a PL/SQL code to explain any four predefined exception.
- 4. Discuss PRAGMA Exception.
- 5. Discuss the SQLCODE and SQLERRM functions.

6. Is it possible for a PL/SQL block to process more than one exception at a time?

# 4.10FURTHER READING

- 1. Advanced PL/SQL Programming: The Definitive Reference by Boobal Ganesan
- 2. SQL/PLSQL, The ProgrammingLanguage of ORACLE, BPBPublication by Ivan.
- 3. Introduction to Database Systems, 4th Edition, C. J. Date, Narose Publishing.